

the **THIRD** edition

New Headway

Elementary Student's Book

Liz and John Soars








OXFORD

NEW

www.oup.com/elt/headway

CONTENTS








LANGUAGE INPUT

UNIT	GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	EVERYDAY ENGLISH
 1 Hello everybody! p6	Verb to be <i>am/is/are</i> <i>I'm from London. p6</i> <i>He's a student. p9</i> Possessive adjectives <i>my, your, his, her p6, p8</i>	Countries <i>Mexico, Japan p8</i> Using a bilingual dictionary p10 Everyday objects <i>a key, a newspaper p10</i> Plural nouns <i>bags, apples p10</i>	Hello and goodbye <i>Telephone numbers p11</i> <i>How are you?</i> <i>See you later! p11</i>
 2 Meeting people p12	Verb to be <i>Questions and negatives</i> <i>What's her first name? p12</i> <i>She isn't married. p13</i> Negatives and short answers <i>No, she isn't. p13</i> Possessive 's <i>Patrick's daughter p14</i>	The family <i>mother, uncle p14</i> Opposite adjectives <i>old – young p16</i> Food and drink <i>hamburger and chips</i> <i>tea, coffee p18</i>	In a café Prices p18 <i>Can I have ... ?</i> <i>How much is ... ? p19</i>
 3 The world of work p20	Present Simple 1 <i>he/she/it p20</i> <i>She works 16 hours a day. p21</i> Questions and negatives <i>Does he speak Spanish? He doesn't</i> <i>speak Spanish or French. p22</i>	Verbs <i>help, make, serve p24</i> Jobs <i>A pilot flies planes. p26</i>	What time is it? <i>It's quarter past five.</i> <i>It's just after six o'clock.</i> p27
 4 Take it easy! p28	Present Simple 2 <i>I/you/we/they</i> <i>I go to the gym.</i> <i>We don't go out on Fridays.</i> <i>Why do you like your job? p29</i>	Verbs <i>relax, go out, play p29</i> Leisure activities <i>dancing, skiing p30</i>	Social expressions <i>I'm sorry.</i> <i>Excuse me?</i> <i>Pardon? p35</i>
Stop and check 1 Teacher's Book p154			
 5 Where do you live? p36	There is/are <i>There's a television. p36</i> How many ... ? <i>How many books are there? p36</i> Prepositions of place <i>in front of the sofa p37</i> some and any <i>There are some cups.</i> <i>There aren't any plates. p38</i> this, that, these, those <i>This is the kitchen.</i> <i>What's in these cupboards? p38</i>	Rooms <i>living room, kitchen p36</i> Things in the house <i>armchair, lamp, cupboard,</i> <i>washing machine p36</i> What's in your bag? <i>bus ticket, mobile, keys p39</i> Places <i>cinema, pub p43</i>	Directions 1 <i>Is there a post office near</i> <i>here?</i> <i>Yes, it's over there. p43</i>
 6 Can you speak English? p44	can/can't <i>She can walk now.</i> <i>We can't write. p44</i> was/were <i>Where were you yesterday? p46</i> could <i>I could swim when I was five. p46</i> was born <i>She was born in England. p47</i>	Countries and languages <i>France, French p44</i> Verbs <i>translate, check, laugh p45</i> Words that sound the same <i>I, eye; no, know p50</i>	On the phone Directory Enquiries p50 <i>Can I speak to Jo,</i> <i>please?</i> <i>I'll just get her. p51</i>
 7 Then and now p52	Past Simple 1 Regular verbs <i>She worked in over 50 films. p52</i> Irregular verbs <i>His father got a job in London. p54</i> Time expressions <i>last night</i> <i>yesterday morning p55</i>	Verbs <i>earn, act, study p53</i> Verbs <i>get, leave, become p54</i> Words that go together <i>drive a car, railway station p58</i>	What's the date? <i>the first of April p59</i>

SKILLS DEVELOPMENT

READING	SPEAKING	LISTENING	WRITING
Svetlana and Tiago p9	Introducing yourself p7	The alphabet song p10	Introducing yourself p9
An email from England p16	Talking about you p13 Your family p15	An email from England – Where is Danka? p16	Write about your class p16
Seumas McSporran – the man with thirteen jobs! p24	Asking about a friend or relative p23	Seumas's day p25	Natural writing Using pronouns p114
My favourite season p32	Leisure activities p30 What's your favourite season? p32 A questionnaire – Do you have a healthy lifestyle? p34	My favourite season – Where are they? p32	Informal letters To a penfriend p115
Living in a bubble p40	What's in your picture? p37 Talking about where you live p42	What's in Yoshi's briefcase? p39 Homes around the world p42	Describing where you live Linking words <i>and, so, but, because</i> p116
Talented teenagers p48	A questionnaire – What can you do? p45 What can computers do? p45 Roleplay – interview p48	Lucía can't cook p45	Formal letters Applying for a job p117
Two famous firsts – Amelia Earhart and Yuri Gagarin p56	The year I was born p54 When did it happen? p55	1984 – the year I was born p54 Where are the people? p58	Describing a holiday p118

LANGUAGE INPUT

UNIT	GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	EVERYDAY ENGLISH
 8 A date to remember p60	Past Simple 2 negatives – ago <i>People didn't drive cars 100 years ago. p60</i> Time expressions <i>at seven o'clock, on Saturday, in 2002 p61</i>	Relationships <i>fall in love, get engaged p63</i> Spelling and silent letters <i>answer, thought p64</i> Phonetic symbols <i>/we:k/ /'lisən/ p64</i>	Special occasions <i>Thanksgiving</i> <i>Happy Birthday! p64</i>
Stop and check 2 Teacher's Book p156			
 9 Food you like! p66	Count and uncount nouns <i>apples, apple juice p66</i> I like ... ? I'd like ... ? <i>Do you like tea? Would you like some tea? p67</i> a and some <i>a cake, some cake p68</i> much and many <i>There isn't much milk.</i> <i>There aren't many eggs. p68</i>	Food and drink <i>chocolate, chips, beer, apple juice p66</i> <i>chopsticks, noodles, sardines p71</i>	Polite offers and requests <i>Could you pass the salt, please?</i> <i>Could I have a glass of water, please?</i> <i>Can you give me the recipe?</i> <i>Can I see the menu? p73</i>
 10 Bigger and better! p74	Comparatives and superlatives <i>The country is cheaper than the city. p74</i> <i>Bati Island is the most expensive resort. p76</i> have got <i>I've got a dog.</i> <i>They haven't got a flat. p75</i>	City and country adjectives <i>dirty, noisy</i> <i>exciting, safe p74</i> City and country words <i>wood, museum p80</i>	Directions 2 <i>round the corner</i> <i>over the bridge p81</i>
 11 Looking good! p82	Present Continuous <i>I'm wearing blue jeans.</i> <i>Who is smiling? p82</i> Whose is it? <i>Whose is the baby? p84</i> Possessive pronouns <i>nine, yours, hers p84</i>	Clothes <i>hat, coat, shirt p82</i> Describing people <i>fair hair, blue eyes p82</i> Words that rhyme <i>red, said; eyes, size p88</i> Phonetic symbols <i>vowels and diphthongs p88</i> Tongue twisters p88	In a clothes shop <i>What colour are you looking for?</i> <i>Can I try it on? p89</i>
 12 Life's an adventure! p90	going to <i>I'm going to be a footballer. p90</i> Infinitive of purpose <i>I'm going to Nepal to climb Mount Everest. p92</i>	Verbs <i>sneeze, jump, fall p92</i> The weather <i>sunny, cloudy</i> <i>What's the weather like? p96</i>	Making suggestions <i>What shall we do?</i> <i>Let's go swimming! p97</i>
Stop and check 3 Teacher's Book p158			
 13 Storytime p98	Question forms <i>Why ... ? Which ... ? How much ... ?</i> <i>How many ... ? p98</i> Adjectives and adverbs <i>quick, quickly; good, well p100</i>	Describing feelings <i>bored, worried p101</i> At the chemist's <i>suncream, shampoo, soap p105</i>	At the chemist's <i>I'm looking for some aspirin. p105</i>
 14 Have you ever? p106	Present Perfect ever and never <i>Have you ever been to Barcelona?</i> <i>She's never been to Paris. p106</i> yet and just <i>We haven't been there yet.</i> <i>They've just had a boat ride. p108</i> Present Perfect and Past Simple <i>Maria's been to Berlin.</i> <i>She went there two years ago. p107</i>	Past participles <i>eaten, made, cooked p107</i> At the airport <i>departure lounge, check in p113</i>	At the airport <i>check in your luggage</i> <i>go to gate 4 p113</i>
Stop and check 4 Teacher's Book p160			

SKILLS DEVELOPMENT

READING	SPEAKING	LISTENING	WRITING
Three inventions p62	Getting information – Famous inventions p60 Did you know that? p62 How did you two meet? p63	Three inventions p62 How did you two meet? p63	Writing about a friend Linking words <i>because, when, until</i> p119
Food around the world p70	Food you like p66 Roleplay – shopping p69 Meals in your country p70	My favourite national food p72	Filling in forms Booking a hotel p120
Viva la danza! – Havana / Buenos Aires / Seville p78	I've got more than you! p76 Talking about your town p78 A walk in the country/city p80	Comparing life in the city and country p74	Describing a place Linking words <i>which, where</i> p121
<i>Flying without wings</i> (Song lyrics) p86	Describing a person/scene p83 Getting information – Who's at the party? p84 My favourite things p87	Who's at the party? p84 A song – <i>Flying without wings</i> p86	Describing people Linking words <i>although, but</i> p122
Born free p94	Dangerous sports p94 Interviews p94 World weather p96	Future plans p90	Writing a postcard p123
A short story – <i>The Christmas Presents</i> p102	Childhood stories p99 Telling a story p100	Noises in the night p100 A short story – <i>The Christmas Presents</i> p102	Writing a story Using adjectives and adverbs p124
We've never learnt to drive! p110	Cities you have been to p107 Things you have done p108	What has Ryan done? p108 A honeymoon in Venice p108 A song – <i>All around the world</i> p112	Writing an email Saying thank you p125



1

Hello everybody!

am/is/are · my/your/his/her · Countries · Everyday objects · Numbers · Hello and goodbye

STARTER



1 Say your names.

I'm Ali.

I'm Thomas.

2 Stand up in alphabetical order and say your names.

I'm Ali.

I'm Birgit.

I'm Thomas.

I'm Zak.



INTRODUCTIONS

am/is/are, my/your

1 **T 1.1** Read and listen.

A Hello. My name's Marco.

What's your name?

B Emma.

A Where are you from, Emma?

B I'm from London.

T 1.1 Listen and repeat.

GRAMMAR SPOT

name's = name is

what's = what is

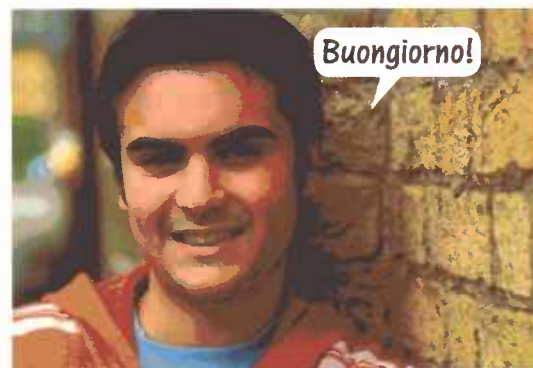
I'm = I am





4 Where are the people from? Write the countries from the box.

the USA England Italy



1 This is Marco.
He's from _____.



2 This is Emma.
She's from _____.



3 This is Lisa and Mike.
They're from _____.

2 Write the conversation.

A Hello. My _____ Lisa. What's _____ name?

B Mike.

A _____ are you from, Mike?

B _____ from Boston. Where _____ you from?

A _____ Boston, too!

T 1.2 Listen and check.

3 Stand up! Talk to the students in the class.

Hello! My name's _____.
What's your name?

Maria.

Where are you from, Maria?

I'm from _____.

T 1.3 Listen and repeat.

GRAMMAR SPOT

he's = he is
she's = she is
they're = they are

Countries, his/her

5 **T 1.4** Listen and repeat.

	• •	• •	• • •	• • • •
the USA	England	Brazil	Italy	Australia
France	Poland	Japan	Hungary	
Spain	Russia		Mexico	
			Germany	

6 Where are they from? Write the countries from exercise 5.



This is Danka.

1 She's from Poland.



This is Jason.

2 He's _____



This is Akiko and Miho.

3 They're _____



This is Rosa.

4 _____



This is Tiago.

5 _____



This is Svetlana.

6 _____



This is Luc and Dominique.

7 _____



This is Henning.

8 _____



This is Zoli and Kristóf.

9 _____

7 Ask and answer questions about the people. Use *she/her* and *he/his*.

What's her name?

Danka.

Where's she from?

Poland.

What's his name?

Jason.

Where's he from?

Australia.

GRAMMAR SPOT

Complete the table with *am*, *is*, and *are*.

I	_____	from England.
He She It	_____	
We You They	_____	

►► Grammar Reference 1.1 and 1.2 p137

PRACTICE

Talking about you

- 1 Ask and answer questions with a partner about the students in your class.

What's his name?

Where's he from?

- 2 Introduce your partner to the class.

This is Kurt. He's from Hamburg in Germany.

Listening and pronunciation

- 3 **T 1.5** Listen and tick (✓) the sentence you hear.

- 1 ☐ She's from Spain.
☐ He's from Spain.
- 2 ☐ What's her name?
☐ What's his name?
- 3 ☐ They're from Japan.
☐ They're in Japan.
- 4 ☐ Where's she from?
☐ Where's he from?
- 5 ☐ He's a teacher in Italy.
☐ His teacher's in Italy.

Check it

- 4 Complete the sentences with *am*, *is*, *are*, *his*, *her*, or *your*.

- 1 My name is Emma.
- 2 Where are you from?
- 3 I am from Italy.
- 4 'What's her name?' 'My name's Daniella.'
- 5 Lisa and Mike are from Boston.
- 6 This is my teacher. His name's Richard.
- 7 Where is he from?
- 8 This is my sister. Her name's Miho.

Reading and writing

- 5 **T 1.6** Listen and read about Svetlana.




Svetlana

Posted: 30 August, 14:21

My name's Svetlana Mariskova and I'm a teacher. I'm 30. I'm married and I have two children. I live in a flat in Moscow. I want to learn English for my job.



- 6 Complete the text about Tiago.



Tiago

Posted: 2 October, 09:07

My name's Tiago Costa and I'm a student. I am 18. I'm not married. I have one sister and two brothers. I live in a house in Fortaleza, Brazil. I want to learn English because it's an international language.



- T 1.7** Listen and check.

- 7 Write about you. Then read it to the class.

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Everyday objects

- 1 **T 1.8** Listen to the alphabet song. Say the alphabet as a class.

abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz

- 2 Look at this extract from an English/Italian dictionary.

the pronunciation	the word in Italian
apple /'æpl/	n. <i>mela</i>
the word in English	the part of speech (n. = noun)

- 3 Match the words and pictures.

	● ●	● ● ●	● ● ● ●
a stamp	an apple	a dictionary	a magazine
a bag	an orange	a newspaper	
a key	a camera		
a watch	a ticket		
	a postcard		
	a mobile		

- T 1.9** Listen and repeat.



- 4 Ask and answer questions with a partner.

What's **a**?

It's an apple.

How do you spell that?

A, double P, ...

- 5 Look at the words. When is it *a*? When is it *an*?

a bag a ticket a mobile
an apple an orange an English newspaper

- 6 Look at the plural words.

two stamps two apples two dictionaries

Say the plurals of the other words in exercise 3.

►► Grammar Reference 1.4 and 1.5 p137

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Hello and goodbye

- 1 Say the numbers 1–20 round the class.
- 2 **T 1.10** Read and listen to the telephone numbers. Read them aloud.

682 947 six eight two — nine four seven

07700 900318 'oh' double seven double 'oh' — nine double 'oh' three one eight

00 1 212 799 7050 double 'oh' — one — two one two — seven double nine — seven 'oh' five 'oh'

- 3 **T 1.11** Listen and write the numbers you hear. Practise them.
- 4 Ask and answer the question with other students. Write a list.

What's your phone number?

My mobile's 07726 751180.

My home number's 01632 77944.

Thank you very much.

- 5 **T 1.12** Listen to the conversations. Write them in the correct order.



- 1 ☐ I'm fine, thank you. And you?
☐ I'm OK, thanks.
☐ Hello, Lisa. It's Mike.
☐ Mike! How are you?
☒ Hello, Lisa Jefferson.

A _____
 B _____
 A _____
 B _____
 A _____



- 2 ☐ Thanks, and you. See you later!
☐ Bye, Marco! Have a nice day!
☐ Great! Bye, Emma!
☐ Yes, at 7.00 at the cinema.

A _____
 B _____
 A _____
 B _____



- 3 ☐ Not bad, thanks. And you?
☐ Very well, thanks. How are the children?
☐ Hi, Alice! It's me, Charles. How are you?
☐ They're fine.
☐ Hello, 270899.

A _____
 B _____
 A _____
 B _____
 A _____

- T 1.12** Listen again and check.

Music of English

- T 1.13** In English we stress important words. Listen and repeat. Copy the stress.

How are you?

I'm OK, thanks.

Have a nice day.

Not bad, thanks. And you?

See you later.

Very well, thanks.

- 6 Practise the conversations with other students. Then practise again using your name and number.



2

Meeting people

am/is/are – questions and negatives • Possessive 's • Family • Opposites • In a café

STARTER



- 1 Count from 1–20 round the class.
- 2 Count in 10s from 10–100 round the class.
- 3 How old are you? Ask and answer in groups.

Ten

Twenty

Thirty

...

One hundred.

How old are you?

I'm nineteen.

WHO IS SHE?

Questions and negatives

- 1 Read the information about Lisa Jefferson.

Surname	Jefferson
First name	Lisa
Country	the USA
Job	journalist
Address	89, Franklin Street, Cambridge, Boston
Phone number	(616) 326 1204
Age	26
Married	No

- 2 Complete the questions.

- 1 What's her surname? Jefferson.
- 2 her first name? Lisa.
- 3 she from? The USA.
- 4 job? She's a journalist.
- 5 What's ? 89, Franklin Street,
Cambridge, Boston.
- 6 phone number? (616) 326 1204.
- 7 How old ? Twenty-six.
- 8 Is she ? No, she isn't.

T 2.1 Listen and check.
Practise the questions and answers.




- 3 Lisa has a brother. Write questions about him.

T 2.2 Listen and complete the information.

What's his surname? **Jefferson.**

What's his first name?

Surname	Jefferson
First name	
Country	
Job	
Address	
Phone number	
Age	
Married	



Negatives and short answers

- 4 **T 2.3** Read and listen. Then listen and repeat.

Is she Spanish? **No, she isn't.**

Is she English? **No, she isn't.**

Is she American? **Yes, she is.**

Ask and answer Yes/No questions about Lisa.

- a student? a teacher? a journalist?
- eighteen? twenty-one? twenty-six?

- 5 Ask and answer questions about Lisa's brother.

- Peter? Daniel? Rudi?
- a journalist? a student? an actor?
- sixteen? thirty? twenty-eight?

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Complete the answers to the Yes/No questions.

Is Lisa American? Yes, she ____.

Is her surname Smith? No, it ____.

Are you a journalist? No, I'm ____.

- 2 Look at the negatives.

She **isn't** married. You **aren't** English.

But: I'm **not** a teacher. X I ~~am~~'m a teacher.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 2.1 p138

PRACTICE


Who is he?

- 1 Student A Look at this information.

Student B Look at the information on p150.

Ask and answer questions to complete the information.

Surname	Binchey
First name	
Country	Ireland
Job	
Address	20, Model Farm Road, Cork City
Phone number	
Age	48
Married	




- 2 Ask and answer Yes/No questions about Patrick.

- Smith? Jefferson? Binchey?
- from England? from Italy? from Ireland?
- an actor? a teacher? an accountant?

Talking about you

- 3 Ask your teacher some questions.

What's your first name? **Isabel.**

Are you married? **No, I'm not.**

What ...

- 4 Ask two students questions to complete the form.

	Student 1	Student 2
Name		
Country/town		
Job		
Address		
Phone number		
Age		
Married		



Tell the class about one of the students.

PATRICK'S FAMILY

Possessive 's

1 Write the words in the correct place.

brother father daughter wife aunt grandmother girlfriend

	boyfriend	husband		son		uncle	grandfather
	girlfriend		mother		sister		

2 **T 2.4** Read about Patrick Binchey and listen. Write the people's names in the correct place.

This is a photo of Patrick, his wife, and his children. His wife's name is Brenda. She's a teacher. His daughter's name is Lara. She's twenty-one and she's a nurse. His son's name is Benny. He's nineteen and he's a student. Lara's boyfriend is a nurse, too. His name is Mick.



3 Ask and answer questions about Patrick's family.

Who's Brenda?

She's Patrick's wife.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Look at 's.

She's a teacher: She's = She is.

His wife's name: His wife's name = her name
's = possession.

2 Find other examples in the text of 's = possession and 's = is.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 2.2 p138

PRACTICE

You and your family

1 Ask your teacher questions about the people in his/her family.

What's your mother's name?

What's your sister's name?

2 Write the names of people in your family. Ask and answer questions with a partner.

Pierre Hélène Marie Jean-Claude Alice

Ask a partner questions about his/her family.

Who's Pierre?

He's my brother.

Who's Hélène?

She's my aunt. She's my mother's sister.

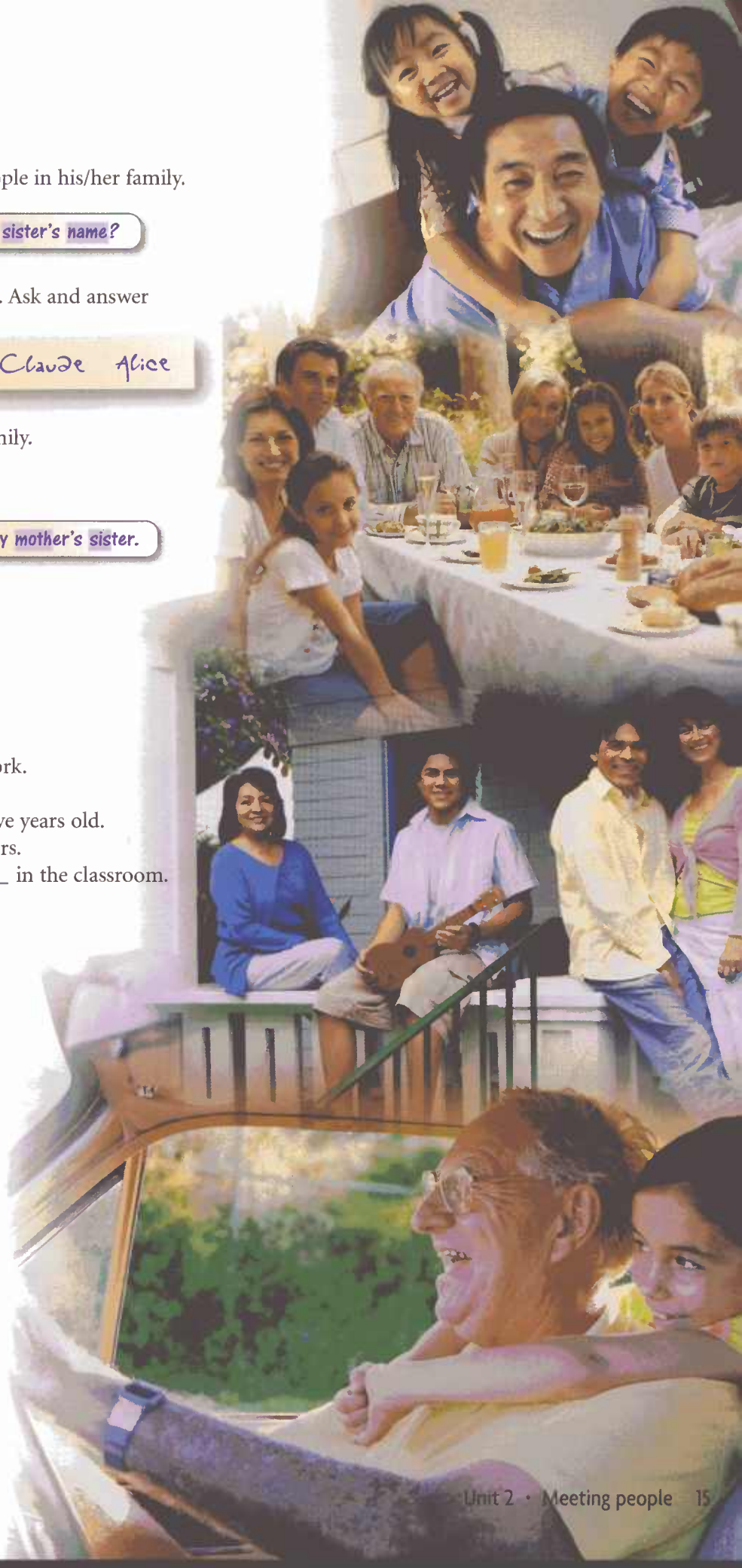
3 Make true sentences with the verb *to be*.

- 1 I 'm not at home.
- 2 We _____ in class.
- 3 It _____ Monday today.
- 4 My teacher's name _____ John.
- 5 My mother and father _____ at work.
- 6 I _____ married.
- 7 My grandmother _____ seventy-five years old.
- 8 Marco and Carlo _____ my brothers.
- 9 We _____ in the café. We _____ in the classroom.

Check it

4 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- 1 ☐ I'm a doctor.
☐ I'm doctor.
- 2 ☐ I have twenty-nine years old.
☐ I am twenty-nine years old.
- 3 ☐ I no married.
☐ I'm not married.
- 4 ☐ My sister's name is Michelle.
☐ My sisters name is Michelle.
- 5 ☐ She married.
☐ She's married.
- 6 ☐ I'm an uncle.
☐ I'm a uncle.
- 7 ☐ I have two brother.
☐ I have two brothers.
- 8 ☐ Peter's the son of my sister.
☐ Peter's my sister's son.



Opposites

1 Match the adjectives with their opposites.

big
old
new
lovely
easy
hot
expensive
fast

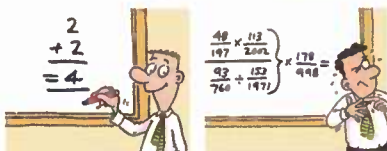
horrible
old
small
difficult
cheap
cold
slow
young

2 Write about the pictures, using the adjectives.

1 a It's small.
b It's big.



2 a It's
b It's



3 a He's
b She's



4 a They're
b They're



5 a It's
b It's



6 a It's
b It's



7 a They're
b They're



8 a It's
b It's



T 2.5 Listen and check. Practise saying the sentences.

READING AND LISTENING

An email from England

T 2.6 Danka is a student at an English language school in Brighton, England. Read and listen to her email to Jacek, her brother in Poland.



2 Match photographs 1–3 with a part of the email.



3 Correct the false (X) sentences.

- 1 Danka is from Poland. ✓
- 2 She's on holiday. ✗ **No, she isn't. She's at school.**
- 3 She's in London.
- 4 The students in her class are all from Germany.
- 5 It's a very big class.
- 6 Becky and James are both students.
- 7 The student bars are cheap.
- 8 Danka's happy in Brighton.

4 Write the questions about Danka's email.

- 1 Where's Danka from ? Poland.
- 2 _____ ? Japan, Brazil, Switzerland,
Germany, and Italy.
- 3 _____ ? Simon.
- 4 _____ ? They are brother and sister.
They live with Danka.
- 5 _____ ? James is 25 and Becky's 19.
- 6 Brighton ? No, it isn't.

5 T 2.7 Listen to three conversations. Where is Danka? Who is she with?

Writing

6 Write an email about *your* class.

From: Danka@brighton.ac.uk

To: Jacek.2006@star.com

Date: 12th July

Subject: Hi!

Dear Jacek,

How are you? I'm fine. Here's an email in English. It's good practice for you and me!

I have classes in English at The Embassy Language School. I'm in a class with seven students. They're all from different countries: Japan, Brazil, Switzerland, Germany, and Italy. Our teacher's name's Simon. He's very funny and a very good teacher.

I live with an English family in a small, old house near the centre of town. Robert and Valerie have a daughter and a son. Their daughter, Becky, is 19. She's a student at Brighton University. Their son, James, is a software designer for a computer company. He's 25. They're all very friendly, but it isn't easy to understand them. They speak very fast!

Brighton isn't very big, but it's very exciting! The restaurants and nightclubs are expensive, but the student bars and cafés are cheap. It's hot now, and it's lovely to be near the sea. I'm very happy here.

Email me soon!

Love, Danka

3



2



EVERYDAY ENGLISH

In a café

1 **T 2.8** Read and listen to the prices. Read them aloud.

£1.00	one pound	£7.50	seven pounds fifty
50p	fifty p /pi:/	£10.75	ten pounds seventy-five
£5.00	five pounds		

2 **T 2.9** Write the prices you hear. Practise saying them.

2 Read the menu. Match the food and pictures.

Brighton Pier Café

Menu

Chicken salad	£5.50
Tuna and egg salad	£5.25
Fish and chips	£4.95
Hamburger and chips	£4.25
Pizza	£3.75
Chocolate cake	£2.50
Apple pie	£2.25
Ice-cream	£2.00
Coffee	£1.50
Tea	£1.20
Mineral water	£1.10
Orange juice	£1.00



3 **T 2.10** Listen and repeat. Then ask and answer questions with a partner.

How much is a hamburger and chips?

Four pounds twenty-five.

How much is a hamburger and chips and an orange juice?

Five pounds twenty-five.

4 **T 2.11** Listen and complete the conversations in the cafés.



- 1 A Good morning.
 B Good _____. Can I have a _____, please?
 A Here you are. Anything else?
 B No, thanks.
 A _____, please.
 B Thanks.
 A Thank you.



- 2 A Hi. Can I help?
 B Yes. Can I have a _____ salad, please?
 A Anything to drink?
 B Yeah. A _____, please.
 A OK. Here you are.
 B _____ is that?
 A _____ pounds _____, please.
 B Thanks.

Music of English

T 2.12 Words often link. Listen and practise the rhythm.

Can I help?

A cup of coffee, please.

a tuna and egg salad

Here you are. Anything else?

How much is that?

5 Practise the conversations with your partner. Make more conversations.

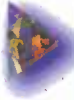


3

The world of work

Present Simple 1 – *he/she/it* • Questions and negatives • Jobs • What time is it?

STARTER



What are the jobs of the people in your family? Tell the class.

My father is a doctor.

My mother is a ...

My brother ...

THREE JOBS

Present Simple *he/she/it*

- 1 **T 3.1** Listen and read about István and Pamela.
What's his job? What's her job?

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Underline all the verbs in the texts.
is comes
- 2 What is the last letter of these verbs?

Pronunciation

- 3 Is -s pronounced /s/ or /z/?
T 3.2 Listen and write the verbs.

/s/	/z/
<u>works</u>	<u>is</u>
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Practise saying them.

István Kis

István is a music professor. He comes from Budapest in Hungary, but now he lives in the USA. He works four days a week at the University of Texas, Austin. He speaks three languages: Hungarian, English, and German. He's married to an American and has a daughter. He likes playing tennis in his free time.



- 2 Read the texts aloud.

PRACTICE

Talking about people

1 Read the information about Fernando.

Fernando Diaz



Job	tourist guide
Country	Peru
Town	Lima
Place of work	in a tourist office
Languages	Spanish, English, and a little German
Married	no
Family	a dog (!)
Free time	walking his dog, playing football

2 Talk about Fernando.

Fernando's a tourist guide.

He comes from ... and he ... Lima.

He works ...

He speaks ...

He isn't ...

He has a ...

He likes ...

3 Write about a friend or a relative. Talk to a partner about him/her.

My friend Anna is a student. She lives in ...

3 Complete the sentences about István and Pamela.

- István's a music professor. Pamela's _____ a _____ doctor.
- He comes from Hungary. She _____ Canada.
- He lives in a big city, but she _____ in a _____ town.
- He _____ four days _____ week. She _____ 16 hours a day _____.
- He _____ three languages. She _____ to sick people on her radio.
- He loves his job and she _____, too.
- He _____ daughter. She _____ married.
- He _____ playing tennis in his free time. She never _____ free time.

T 3.3 Listen and check. Read the sentences aloud.

Pamela Green

Pamela is a doctor. She's Canadian, but now she lives in a small town near Nairobi, Kenya, in East Africa. She isn't an ordinary doctor, she's a flying doctor. Every day from 8 a.m. to 10 a.m. she speaks to people on her radio, then she flies to help them. She works 16 hours a day non-stop, but she loves her job. She isn't married. She has no free time.



WHAT DOES HE DO?

Questions and negatives

- 1 **T 3.4** Read and listen. Complete the answers. Practise the questions and answers.

- Where **does** István **come** from?
Budapest, _____ Hungary.
- What **does** he **do**?
He's _____ music professor.
- Does** he **speak** German?
_____, he does.
- Does** he **speak** Spanish?
_____, he doesn't. He doesn't speak Spanish or French.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- What does he/she do? = What's his/her job?
- Complete these sentences with the correct form of *come*.

Positive He _____ from Hungary.

Negative He _____ from Poland.

Question Where _____ he _____ from?

Pronunciation

- 3 **T 3.5** Listen. Notice the pronunciation of *does* and *doesn't*.

/dəz/

Does he **speak** German?

/dəz/

Yes, he **does**.

/ˈdʌznt/

No, he **doesn't**.

Practise saying the question and short answers.

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 3.1 p138**

- 2 Complete the questions and answers.

- Where _____ Pamela _____ from?
Canada.
- What _____ she _____?
She's a doctor.
- _____ she live in Canada?
No, she _____.
- _____ she _____ her job?
Yes, she _____.

T 3.6 Listen, check and practise.

- 3 Write similar questions about Fernando the tourist guide. Ask and answer with a partner.

Where does Fernando come from?

Peru.

PRACTICE

Asking about people

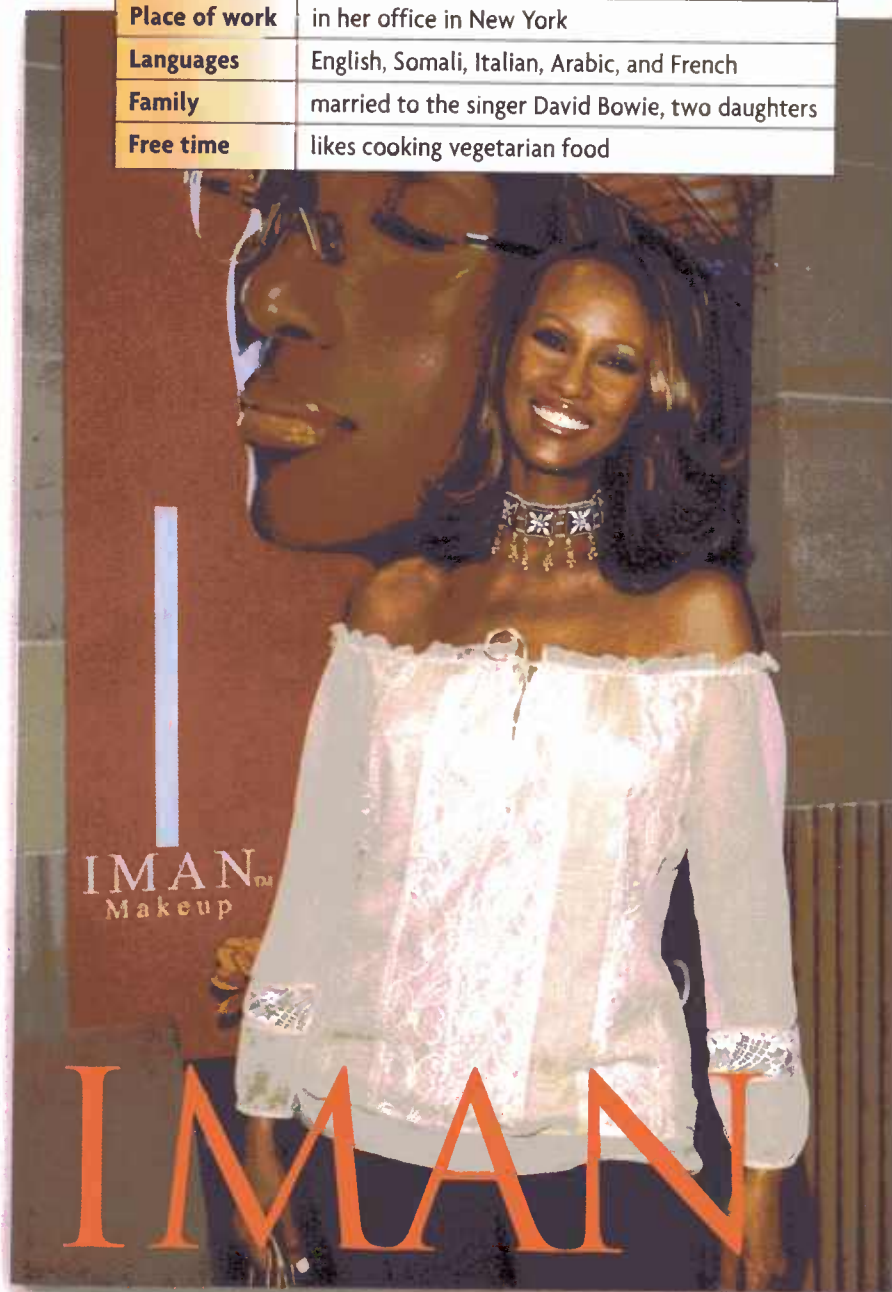
- Read the information about Iman or Giorgio.
- Talk to a partner.

Iman's a model and businesswoman.

She comes from Somalia.

She lives ...

Iman	
Job	model and businesswoman
Country	Somalia
Town	New York
Place of work	in her office in New York
Languages	English, Somali, Italian, Arabic, and French
Family	married to the singer David Bowie, two daughters
Free time	likes cooking vegetarian food



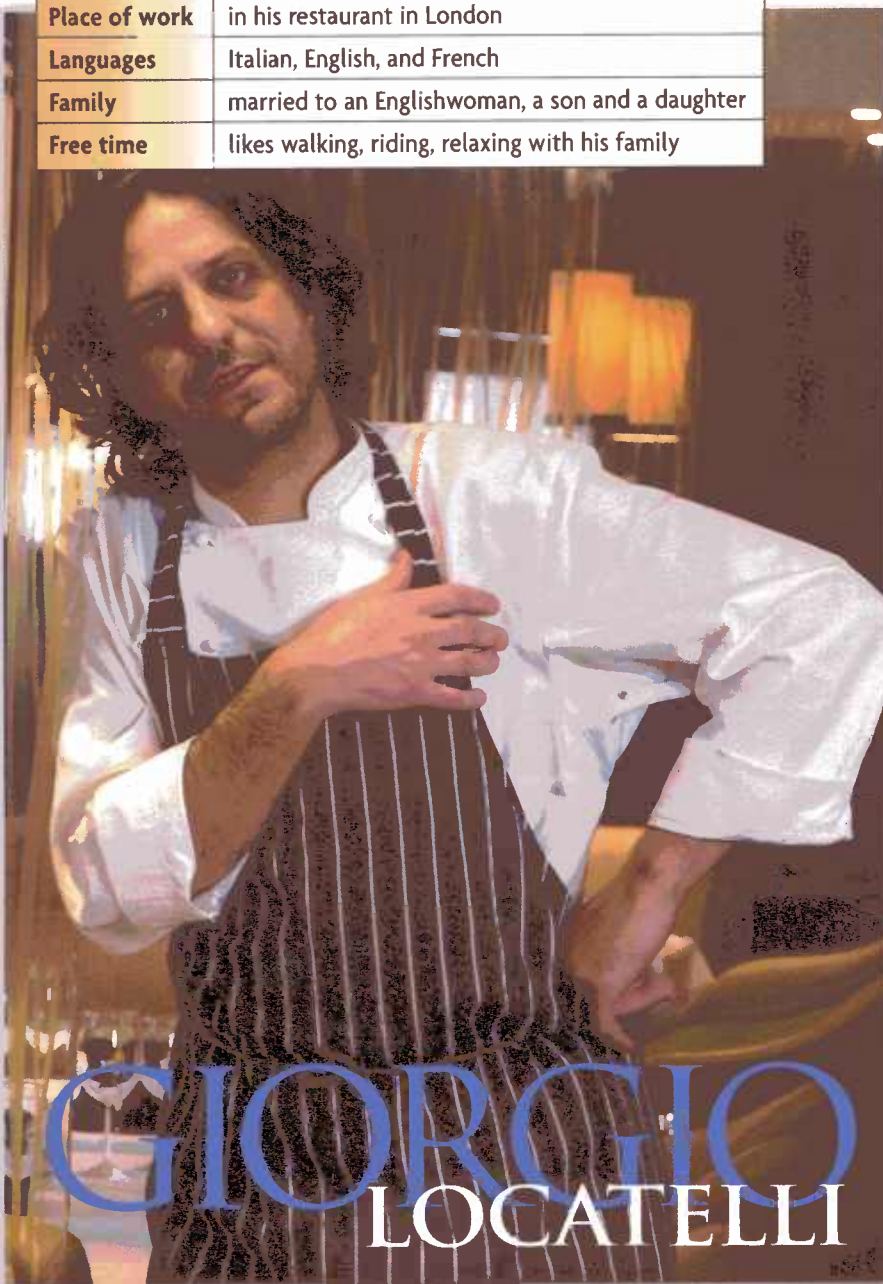
3 Write questions about Iman or Giorgio.

- What/do? **What does Iman do?**
- Where/come from?
- Where/live?
- Where/work?
- ... speak French? **Does she/he ...**
- How many children ...?
- ... a dog?
- What ... in her/his free time?
- ... like cooking?

4 Ask and answer questions with your partner.

5 Now ask your partner the same questions about a friend or relative.

	Giorgio Locatelli
Job	chef
Country	Italy
Town	London
Place of work	in his restaurant in London
Languages	Italian, English, and French
Family	married to an Englishwoman, a son and a daughter
Free time	likes walking, riding, relaxing with his family



Listening and pronunciation

6 **T 3.7** Listen to the sentences about Iman and Giorgio. Correct the wrong sentences.

Iman comes from Somalia.

Yes, that's right.

Iman lives and works in Somalia.

No, she doesn't. She lives and works in New York.

7 **T 3.8** Tick (✓) the sentence you hear.

- ☐ He likes his job.
☐ She likes her job.
- ☐ She loves walking.
☐ She loves working.
- ☐ He's married.
☐ He isn't married.
- ☐ Does she have three children?
☐ Does he have three children?
- ☐ What does he do?
☐ Where does he go?

Check it

8 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- ☐ She comes from Somalia.
☐ She come from Somalia.
- ☐ What he do in his free time?
☐ What does he do in his free time?
- ☐ Where lives she?
☐ Where does she live?
- ☐ He isn't married.
☐ He doesn't married.
- ☐ Does she has two sons?
☐ Does she have two sons?
- ☐ He doesn't play football.
☐ He no plays football.
- ☐ She doesn't love Peter.
☐ She doesn't loves Peter.
- ☐ What's he's address?
☐ What's his address?

► **WRITING** Natural writing p114

READING AND LISTENING

Seumas McSporran – the man with thirteen jobs!

1 Seumas McSporran /'seɪməs mək'spɒrən/ comes from Scotland. (This is his real name!) Look at the photographs of some of the things he does every day.

2 Match a sentence with a photograph.

- 1 ☒ h He **helps** in the shop.
- 2 ☐ He **makes** breakfast for the hotel guests.
- 3 ☐ He **serves** petrol.
- 4 ☐ He **delivers** the beer to the pub.
- 5 ☐ He **collects** the post from the boat.
- 6 ☐ He **drives** the children to school.
- 7 ☐ He **delivers** the letters.
- 8 ☐ He **has** a glass of wine.
- 9 ☐ He **works** as an undertaker.

3 Read about Seumas. Answer the questions.

- 1 Where does Seumas live?
- 2 How old is he?
- 3 How many jobs does he have?
- 4 What's his wife's name?
- 5 What does she do?
- 6 How many people live on Gigha?
- 7 How many tourists visit Gigha in summer?
- 8 What does Seumas do in the morning?
- 9 What do he and Margaret do in the evening?

4 Look at the photos. Ask and answer questions with a partner about times in Seumas's day.

What does he do at six o'clock?

He gets up and makes breakfast.

The man

a 6.00 a.m.



b 8.00 a.m.



c 9.00 a.m.



d 10.00 a.m.



e 12.00 p.m.



f 2.00 p.m.



with 13 jobs

SEUMAS McSPORRAN is a very busy man. He is 60 years old and he has thirteen jobs.

He is a postman, a policeman, a fireman, a taxi driver, a school-bus driver, a boatman, an ambulance man, an accountant, a petrol attendant, a barman, and an undertaker. Also, he and his wife, Margaret, have a shop and a small hotel.

Seumas lives and works on the island of Gigha / gijə/ in the west of Scotland. Only 120 people live on Gigha, but in summer 150 tourists come by boat every day.

Every weekday Seumas gets up at 6.00 and makes breakfast for the hotel guests. At 8.00 he drives the island's children to school. At 9.00 he collects the post from the boat and delivers it to all the houses on the island. He also delivers the beer to the island's only pub. Then he helps Margaret in the shop.

He says: 'Margaret likes being busy, too. We never have holidays and we don't like watching television. In the evenings Margaret makes supper and I do the accounts. At 10.00 we have a glass of wine and then we go to bed. Perhaps our life isn't very exciting, but we like it.'



g 3.00 p.m.



h 5.00 p.m.



i 10.00 p.m.

5 T 3.9 Listen to four conversations from Seumas's day. After each one answer these questions.

- 1 Is it morning, afternoon, or evening?
- 2 Who are the people? Where are they?
- 3 What is Seumas's job?

6 Complete the conversations.

- 1 A Good _____. Can I _____ two ice-creams, please?
B Chocolate or vanilla?
A One chocolate, one vanilla, please.
B That's _____. Anything _____?
A No, thank you.

- 2 A Only _____ letters for you this _____, Mrs Craig.
B Thank you very much, Mr McSporrان.
And _____'s Mrs McSporrان this _____?
A Oh, she's very well, thank you. She's _____ in the shop.

- 3 A A glass of _____ before bed, my dear?
B Oh, yes please.
A _____ you are.
B Thank you, my dear. I'm very _____ this _____.

- 4 A Hello, Mr McSporrان!
B Good _____, boys and girls.
Hurry up, we're late.
A Can I sit here, Mr McSporrان?
C No, no, I _____ to sit there.
B Be quiet _____ of you, and
SIT DOWN!

Practise the conversations with your partner.

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Jobs

- 1 Use your dictionary and match a picture with a job in column A.

A	B
a A pilot	designs buildings.
b A chef	wears beautiful clothes.
c A nurse	looks after people in hospital.
d A lawyer	makes films.
e An actor	writes for a newspaper.
f A journalist	cooks in a restaurant.
g A model	sells things.
h An architect	flies planes.
i A shop assistant	helps people in court.



- 2 Match a job in A with a line in B.

T 3.10 Listen and check.

- 3 Look at the phonetic spelling of some of the words. Practise saying them.

- 1 /nɜːs/ 4 /'fɒp ə'sɪstənt/
 2 /'mɒdəl/ 5 /'ɑːkɪtekt/
 3 /'æktə(r)/ 6 /ʃef/

T 3.11 Listen and repeat.

- 4 Memorize the jobs. Close your books. Ask and answer questions with a partner.

What does a **pilot** do?

He/She **flies planes**.

► Phonetic symbols p159



EVERYDAY ENGLISH

What time is it?

1 Look at the clocks. Write the times.



It's **five** o'clock.

1



It's **half past five**.

2



It's **quarter past five**.

3



It's **quarter to six**.

4



It's **five past five**.

5



It's **twenty past five**.

6



It's **twenty-five to six**.

7



It's **ten to six**.

8



T 3.12 Listen and check. Practise saying the times.

2 Look at the times.



It's **just before three** o'clock.



It's **just after five** o'clock.

What time is it now? What time does the lesson end?

Music of English

T 3.13 In English the voice goes up and down. Copy the stress and intonation.

Conversation 1

Excuse me. Can you tell me the time, please?

Yes, of course. It's just after six o'clock.

Thanks.

Conversation 2

Excuse me. Can you tell me the time, please?

I'm sorry, I don't know. I don't have a watch.

Never mind.

3 With a partner, draw clocks on a piece of paper. Make more conversations.

4 Take it easy!

Present Simple 2 – I/you/we/they • Leisure activities • Social expressions

STARTER

- 1 What year is it? What month is it? What day is it today?
- 2 Say the days of the week. Which days are the weekend?

WEEKDAYS AND WEEKENDS

Present Simple I/you/we/they

- 1 **T 4.1** Listen and read about Ceri Bevan.
What's her job? What does she do at weekends?
- 2 Complete the text with the verbs.

trains works is plays x2 lives doesn't relax has loves

***'I work hard and
I play hard, too!'***
says Ceri Bevan

Ceri _____ 28 years old and _____ in Cardiff, Wales. She _____ hard as a lawyer from Monday to Friday, but she _____ at weekends. She _____ rugby for the Women's Welsh Rugby team. On Saturdays she _____ with her team at the Rugby Club, and on Sundays she _____ in a match. She _____ no free time, but she _____ her job and playing rugby.



- 3 **T 4.2** Close your books and listen to Ceri. Does she have a busy life? Give examples.



'I love my job!'

I love my job as a family lawyer, because I like helping people. But I _____ playing rugby, too, so my life is very busy!

Every lunchtime I _____ in the park near my office. On Monday and Thursday evenings I _____ to the swimming pool with my boyfriend Alex.

On Tuesday and Friday mornings I _____ at 5.30 and _____ to the gym before work. And on Wednesday evenings I _____ with my team at the club.

On Friday evenings I just _____ because I'm usually very tired! I sometimes _____ my sister. She _____ in the centre of Cardiff, too. Or I _____ a nice dinner at home with Alex. We _____ cooking. After dinner we often _____ a DVD.

We never _____ on Saturday evenings, because I always _____ in a match on Sundays. I _____ our team to win the next World Cup!

- 4 Read and complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in the box. Look up new words in your dictionary.

like love x2 get up go running go x2 train relax
visit cook go out play want live watch

Questions and negatives

- 5 **T 4.3** Read and listen. Complete Ceri's answers. Practise the questions and answers.

Where do you work? _____ Cardiff.

Do you like your work? Yes, I _____.

Do you relax at weekends? No, I _____.

Why don't you relax at weekends? _____ I play rugby.

Roleplay

- 6 Work with a partner. One of you is Ceri. Ask and answer questions about your life.

- Where ... you live/work?
- Are ... married?
- What ... job?
- ... like your job?
- Why ... like it? Because I ...
- What time ... get up on Tuesday mornings?
- Why ... get up at ...? Because I ...
- ... like swimming/cooking?
- ... your boyfriend like swimming/cooking?
- Who ... you visit on Fridays?
- Where ... your sister live?
- ... go out on Saturday evenings? Why not?
- ... have a busy life?

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Complete the table for the Present Simple.

	Positive	Negative
I	work	don't work
You		
He/She		
It		
We		
They		

- 2 Complete the questions and answers.

Where _____ you work?

Where _____ she work?

_____ you work in Cardiff? Yes, I _____.

_____ he work in Edinburgh? No, he _____.

- 3 Find the words in the text:

always usually often sometimes never

▶▶ Grammar Reference 4.1 and 4.2 p139

T 4.2 Listen again and check. Read the text aloud.

PRACTICE

Talking about you

1 Make questions. Then match the questions and answers.

Questions	Answers
1 What time	a My mother and sisters.
2 Where	b To Spain or Portugal.
3 What	c After dinner.
4 When	d I always relax.
5 Who	e At 11 o'clock.
6 Why	f Because it's interesting.
7 How	g By bus.
8 Do	h Yes, I do sometimes.

T 4.4 Listen and check.

2 Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Give true answers.

3 Tell the class about you and your partner.

Kim goes to bed at 11.00. I go to bed at 10.00 on weekdays but at half past eleven at weekends.

I live with my parents and my grandmother.
Kim lives with her parents, too.

Listening and pronunciation

4 **T 4.5** Tick (✓) the sentence you hear.

- ☐ What does he do on Sundays?
☐ What does she do on Sundays?
- ☐ Do you stay at home on Tuesday evenings?
☐ Do you stay at home on Thursday evenings?
- ☐ He lives here.
☐ He leaves here.
- ☐ Where do you go on Saturday evenings?
☐ What do you do on Saturday evenings?
- ☐ I read a lot.
☐ I eat a lot.
- ☐ Why do you like your job?
☐ Why don't you like your job?

Positives and negatives

5 Make the sentences opposite.

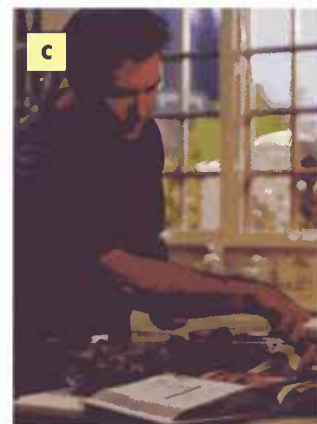
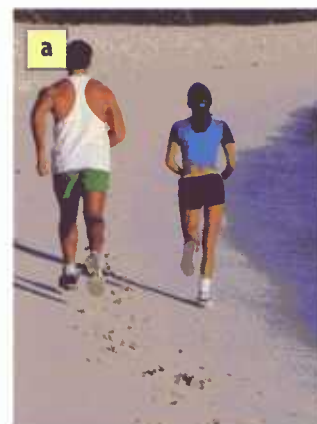
- She's French. **She isn't French.**
- I don't like cooking. **I like cooking.**
- She doesn't speak Spanish.
- They want to learn English.
- We're tired and want to go to bed.
- Roberto likes watching football on TV, but he doesn't like playing it.
- I work at home because I have a computer.
- Amelia isn't happy because she doesn't have a new car.
- I smoke, I drink, and I don't go to bed early.
- He doesn't smoke, he doesn't drink, and he goes to bed early.

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

Leisure activities

1 Match the words and photos.

- ☐ playing football
- ☐ dancing
- ☐ skiing
- ☐ watching TV
- ☐ going to the gym
- ☐ taking photographs
- ☐ cooking
- ☐ playing computer games
- ☐ sailing
- ☐ listening to music
- ☐ swimming
- ☐ reading
- ☐ eating in restaurants
- ☐ going to the cinema
- ☐ going running
- ☐ sunbathing





2 Discuss in groups what you think your teacher likes doing. Choose *five* activities.

I think he/she likes cooking.

No, I think he/she likes eating in restaurants.

Ask your teacher questions to find out who is correct.

Do you like cooking?

Do you like eating in restaurants?

3 Tell the other students what you *like* doing and what you *don't like* doing from the list. Ask questions about the activities.

I don't like watching TV, but I like reading very much.

Oh, really? What do you read?

Why don't you like watching TV?

4 Tell the other students things you like doing which are *not* on the list.

READING AND LISTENING

My favourite season

- 1 1 What season is it now? What are the seasons?
2 What month is it now? Say the months of the year.
3 When are the different seasons in your country?
- 2 Look at the photos. Which season is it? What colours do you see?
- 3 **T 4.6** Read and listen to three people from different countries.
- 4 Answer the questions.
 - 1 What sports do they play?
 - 2 Do Daniella and Axel like skiing?
 - 3 Where do Daniella and her family eat in summer?
 - 4 Where does Sumalee live?
 - 5 Which season does Sumalee like best?
 - 6 What do Sumalee and her friends do in February?
 - 7 Does Daniella like sunbathing?
 - 8 Why does Axel like spring?
 - 9 Where do Daniella's cousins live?
 - 10 Which months are winter months in the three countries?
- 5 There are six mistakes about Daniella, Sumalee, and Axel. Correct them.

Daniella comes from England. In summer she goes surfing and sailing. She loves the beach and she likes sunbathing.

Sumalee comes from the south of Thailand. Her favourite season is summer. She loves dancing.

Axel comes from Norway. He likes winter best. He likes skiing, but he doesn't ski very fast.

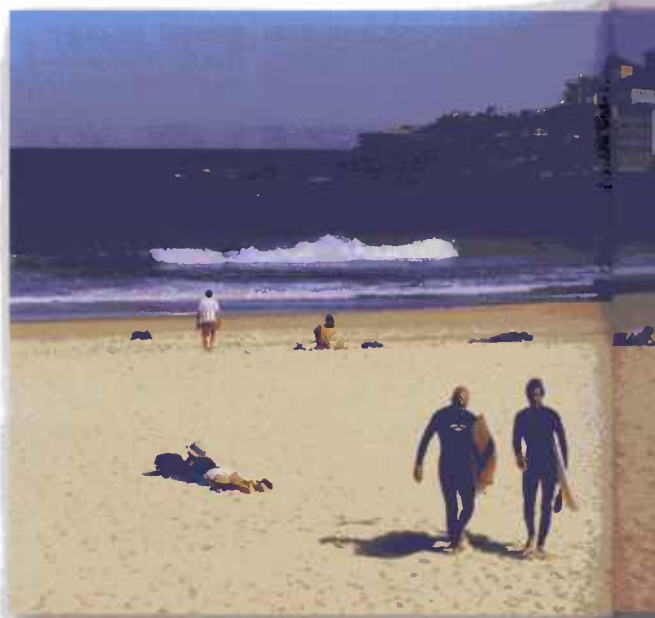
- 6 **T 4.7** Listen to the conversations. Is it Daniella, Sumalee, or Axel? Where are they? How do you know? Discuss with a partner.

What do you think?

- What is *your* favourite season? Why?
- What do you do in the different seasons?

► **SONG** *Colours* Teacher's Book **p139**

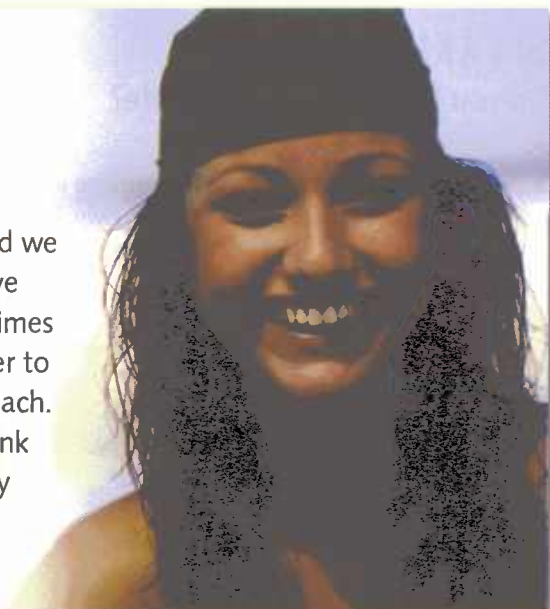
► **WRITING** Informal letters **p115**





Daniella from Australia

I like summer best. We cook and eat in the garden, and we often go to the beach. I don't like sunbathing, but I love water sports. I go surfing and waterskiing, and I sometimes go sailing with my dad. Summer here is from December to February, so we always spend Christmas day on the beach. My cousins in England think this is very funny. They think it's always warm and sunny here in Australia, but in July and August it's sometimes cold and wet.



Sumalee from Thailand

I live in Chiang Mai in the north. We don't have four seasons, we have three – hot, rainy, and cool. I like the cool season from November to February. It's our 'winter'. It's quite hot in the daytime and it's cold at night. In February we have lots of tropical flowers – red, orange, and pink. So every year we have a beautiful Flower Festival. We sing and dance – I love it!



Axel from Norway

Here's a joke about my country: 'Winter is nine months long, and the other three months are good for skiing!' It isn't true! Here the winter months are December to February but it is often cold in spring and autumn too. Our summer is short but warm, with very long days. Spring is my favourite season. It's the best time to go skiing. I love going fast down a white mountain under a beautiful, blue sky. Sometimes you can still ski in June – isn't that amazing!



SPEAKING

Do you have a healthy lifestyle?

- 1 Read and complete the questionnaire about you.
Write ✓ or ✗, then look at the answer key. Are you healthy?

Do **you** have a healthy lifestyle?

Do you ... ?	Me	T	S1	S2
A go to bed early on weekdays	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
B have breakfast every morning	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
C drink mineral water	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
D walk to school/work	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
E play a sport	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
F smoke	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
G drink alcohol	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
H like fast food	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
I watch TV a lot	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
J play computer games	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

KEY

A B C D E ✓ = 1 point
✗ = 0 point

F G H I J ✗ = 1 point
✓ = 0 point

7-10 points
4-6 points
0-3 points

Very good!
OK
Oh dear!

Are you healthy?

- 2 Ask your teacher the questions, then ask two students.
Complete the questionnaire about them.

Do you smoke?

Yes, I do./ Yes, sometimes.

No, I don't./ No, never.

Do you like fast food?

No, I don't.

Yes, I like it a lot.

- 3 Compare with the class. Who is healthy in the class?

Writing

- 4 Use the information in the questionnaire. Write about you and a partner.
I don't go to bed early on weekdays, but Sofia does. We don't eat breakfast every morning ...

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Social expressions

1 Complete the conversations with the expressions.



- 1 A _____. The traffic is bad today.
B _____. Come and sit down.
We're on page 25.

Don't worry.
I'm sorry I'm late.



- 2 A _____.
B Yes?
A Do you have a dictionary?
B _____. I don't. It's at home.
A _____.

I'm sorry,
Excuse me.
It doesn't matter.



- 3 A It's very hot in here. Can I open the window?
B _____.
A The window, can I open it?
B _____.

Pardon?
Yes, of course.



- 4 A _____.
B Oh, good morning Marco. Can I help you?
A Yes, please. Can I have a ticket for the trip to York?
B Yes, of course. It's £80. Do you want to pay £20 deposit now?
A Sorry. _____.
B It means you can pay £20 now and £60 later.
A Ah. _____. Yes, please.

I see.
What does 'deposit' mean?
Excuse me!

T 4.8 Listen and check.

Music of English

T 4.9 Listen and practise the expressions in conversations 1-4. Pay attention to stress and intonation.

2 Practise the conversations with a partner.



5

Where do you live?

There is/are • Prepositions • some/any • this/that/these/those • Furniture • Directions

STARTER



1 Write the words in the correct column.

an armchair a fridge a television a table
a shelf a plant a DVD player a dishwasher
a sink a lamp a cooker a washing machine
a telephone a cupboard a sofa

living room	kitchen	both

2 What's in your living room?
Tell a partner.

WHAT'S IN THE LIVING ROOM?

There is/are, prepositions

1 Suzie has a new flat. Describe her living room on p37.

There's a television.

There are two photos.

2 **T 5.1** Read and listen. Complete the answers.
Practise the questions and answers.

Is there a television?	Yes, there _____.
Is there a computer?	No, there _____.
Are there any books?	Yes, there _____.
How many books are there?	There _____ a lot.
Are there any pictures?	No, there _____.

GRAMMAR SPOT

Complete the table.

Positive	There		a television.
			some books.
Negative	There		a computer.
			any pictures.
Question		there	a telephone?
			any plants?

▶▶ Grammar Reference 5.1 and 5.2 p140



PRACTICE

- 3 Ask and answer questions about these things in Suzie's living room.

a cat	a dog	a DVD player	a fireplace
a mirror	a clock	a coffee table	a rug

plants	pictures	shelves	curtains
newspapers	photos	cushions	DVDs

Is there a cat?

Yes, there is.

- 4 Describe Suzie's living room. Complete the sentences with a preposition.

on under next to in front of behind

- The cat is _____ the sofa _____ Suzie.
- The DVD player is _____ the television.
- There's a photo _____ the mirror.
- There aren't any pictures _____ the walls.
- There's a lamp _____ the sofa.
- There are some magazines _____ the rug _____ the sofa.

What's in your picture?

- 1 Work with a partner. *Don't* look at your partner's picture.

Student A

Look at the picture of the living room on p148. Your picture is not complete. Ask Student B questions and find out where the things go. Draw them on your picture.

Student B

Look at the picture of the living room on p150. Your picture is complete. Answer Student A's questions and help him/her complete the picture.

Where's the lamp?

It's on the table.

Where exactly?

Next to the book.

- 2 **T 5.2** Look at the complete picture together on p150. Listen to someone describing it. There are *five* mistakes in the description. Say 'Stop!' when you hear a mistake.

Stop! There aren't *three* people! There are *four* people!



WHAT'S IN THE KITCHEN?

some/any, this/that/these/those

- 1 This is Suzie's kitchen. Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about these things.

apples a cooker a fridge cupboards cups flowers

Are there any apples?

Yes, there are.

Where are they?

They're next to the cooker.



- 2 **T 5.3** Listen and complete the conversation between Suzie and Matt.

Suzie And this is the kitchen.

Matt Mmm, it's very nice.

Suzie Well, it's not very big, but there _____ a _____ of cupboards.
And _____'s a new fridge, and a cooker. That's new, too.

Matt But what's in all these cupboards?

Suzie Well, not a lot. There are some cups, but there aren't any plates.
And I have _____ knives and forks, but I don't have _____ spoons!

Matt Do you have _____ glasses?

Suzie No. Sorry.

Matt Never mind. We can drink this champagne from those cups! Cheers!

- 3 What is there in your kitchen? How is your kitchen different from Suzie's?

GRAMMAR SPOT

some and any

1 What's the difference between the sentences?

There are **two** magazines.

There are **some** magazines.

2 When do we say *some*? When do we say *any*?

There are **some** cups.

There aren't **any** glasses.

Are there **any** spoons?

this, that, these, those

3 Complete the sentences with *this*, *that*, *these*, or *those*.



I like _____ champagne.



_____ cooker is new.



_____ flowers are lovely.



Give me _____ cups.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 5.3 and 5.4 p140

PRACTICE

In our classroom

1 Complete the sentences with *some* or *any*.

- In our classroom there are _____ books on the floor.
- There aren't _____ plants.
- Are there _____ Spanish students in your class?
- There aren't _____ Chinese students.
- We have _____ dictionaries in the cupboard.
- There aren't _____ pens in my bag.

2 What is there in your classroom? Describe it.

3 Talk about things in your classroom, using *this/that/these/those*. Point to or hold the things.

This is my favourite pen.

I like that bag.

These chairs are nice.

Those windows are dirty.

What's in Yoshi's briefcase?

- 4 **T 5.4** Yoshi Ishigawa is on business in New York. Listen to him describe what's in his briefcase. Tick (✓) the things in it.



- | | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> a newspaper | <input type="checkbox"/> a notebook | <input type="checkbox"/> a letter |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a dictionary | <input type="checkbox"/> keys | <input type="checkbox"/> a mobile |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a sandwich | <input type="checkbox"/> a bus ticket | <input type="checkbox"/> stamps |
| <input type="checkbox"/> pens | <input type="checkbox"/> photos | <input type="checkbox"/> an address book |

- 5 Look in your bag. Ask and answer questions about your bags with a partner.

Is there a dictionary in your bag?

Are there any stamps?

How many stamps are there?

Check it

6 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- ☐ There aren't some sandwiches.
☐ There aren't any sandwiches.
- ☐ Do you have some good dictionary?
☐ Do you have a good dictionary?
- ☐ I have some photos of my dog.
☐ I have any photos of my dog.
- ☐ I have lot of books.
☐ I have a lot of books.
- ☐ How many students are there in this class?
☐ How many of students are there in this class?
- ☐ Next my house there's a park.
☐ Next to my house there's a park.
- ☐ Look at this house over there!
☐ Look at that house over there!
- ☐ Henry, that is my mother. Mum, that is Henry.
☐ Henry, this is my mother. Mum, this is Henry.

READING AND SPEAKING

Living in a bubble

- 1 What are the names of the rooms in a house? What do we do in each room? Match the lines to make sentences.

We cook in	the living room.
We watch TV in	the kitchen.
We sleep in	the study.
We eat in	the bedroom.
We work in	the dining room.

- 2 Look at the photos. What rooms can you see?

- 3 Read about Cyril Jean and his house. Answer the questions.

- 1 Where is Cyril's house? How old is it?
- 2 Why is it called 'a bubble house'?
- 3 What does Cyril do?
- 4 What does Cyril collect?
- 5 How many rooms are there in his house?
- 6 Is there a garden?

- 4 Are the sentences true (✓) or false (✗)?

- 1 Cyril's house is modern.
- 2 There aren't any 'bubble houses' in the south of France.
- 3 There are a lot of clocks in the house.
- 4 The centre of the house is the kitchen.
- 5 Cyril doesn't like listening to music.
- 6 The windows don't have curtains.
- 7 There are three rooms upstairs.
- 8 Antti Lovag thinks the house is funny.

- 5 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about Cyril's home.

Is there a garden?

Yes, there is.

Are there any bedrooms?

Yes, there's one.

Ask about these things:

- a study • pictures • curtains • clocks
- a TV • plants • a lot of kitchen cupboards

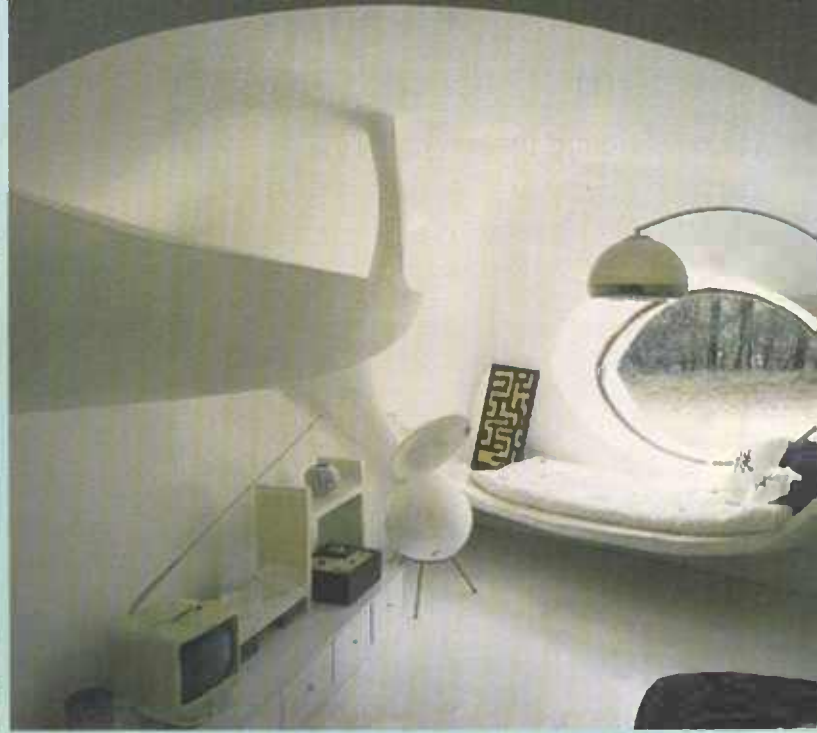
What do you think?

- What do you like about Cyril's home? What don't you like?
- Describe your perfect home.



Living
in a
Bubble





Is this a modern house? Is this a house of the future? Well, no, it isn't. Cyril Jean's house in the south of France is 40 years old. There are more houses like this in the south of France. They are called 'bubble houses,' and you can see why!

Cyril Jean is a designer and he loves round things. He collects old records and clocks. He also collects round furniture. And now he has a completely round house for it all.

The centre of the house is one very big bubble. This is both the living room and dining room. There are round armchairs, a round table, and a big round rug in front of a round fireplace. Around the living room are three small bubbles. One bubble is a kitchen with round cupboards, another bubble is the garden room, and the third bubble is a music room for all Cyril's old records. Upstairs there are two more bubbles – a bedroom, and a bathroom.

The doors and windows are also round, of course. The windows are like eyes. There aren't any curtains in the house, because Cyril likes to see the garden all the time.

Bubble houses are the idea of a Hungarian architect, **Antti Lovag**. Lovag thinks that a lot of modern houses are bad for us, especially tall blocks of flats. He thinks that people are happy in round homes because they are more natural. Cyril agrees with this. 'Some people think my house is funny,' he says. 'But for me, this is the perfect home.'

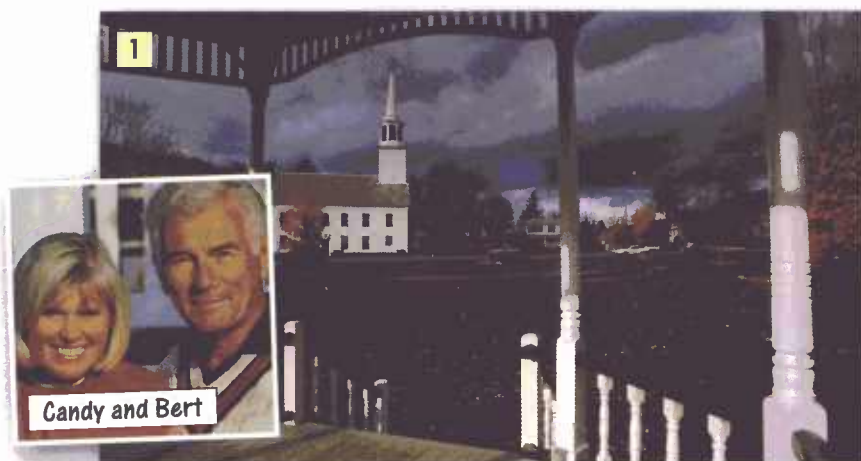


LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Homes around the world

1 Match the places and photos 1–4.

☐ Lisbon ☐ New England ☐ Seoul ☐ Samoa



2 T 5.5 Listen to the people from these places. Complete the chart.

	Candy and Bert	Alise	Kwan	Manola
House or flat?				
Old or modern?				
Where?				
How many bedrooms?				
Live(s) with?				
Extra information				

3 Work with a partner. Talk about the people.

Candy and Bert live in an old, white house.

Alise lives in a house near the sea.

4 Talk about where you live.

Do you live in a house or a flat?

Where is it?

How many rooms ... ?

Do you have a garden?

Who ... ?

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Directions 1

1 Look at the street map of Suzie's town. Where can she do these things? Find the places on the map.

- buy: aspirin some bread
- a book milk
- a DVD stamps
- send an email
- go for a walk
- see a film
- have a drink
- catch a bus



2 **T 5.6** Listen to Suzie's conversations and complete them.

- 1 A _____ me! Is there a _____ near here?
 B Yes. _____ Church Street. Take the first _____
 _____ right. It's _____ the music shop.

A OK. Thanks.

- 2 A Is there a post office near here?
 B Go straight ahead, and it's _____ left, _____
 _____ the pub.

A Thanks a lot.

- 3 A Excuse me! Is there a _____ near here?
 B There's an Internet café in Park Lane _____ the
 bank, and there's an Italian restaurant in Church Street next to
 the _____.

A Is that one _____?

B No. Just two minutes, that's all.

3 Practise the conversations in exercise 2 with a partner.

4 Make more conversations with your partner. Use the expressions in the box to ask and answer about the places.

near here	over there	on the corner
on the right/left	straight ahead	

- a bookshop
- a cinema
- a bank
- a supermarket
- the railway station
- a car park
- a bus stop
- a park
- a swimming pool
- a church
- a pub
- a travel agent's

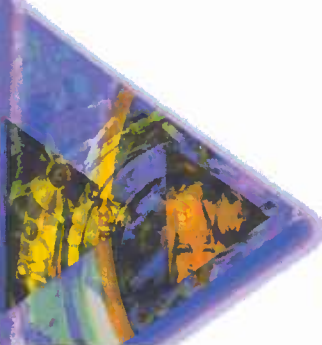
5 Talk about where you are. Is there a chemist's near here? Is it far? What about a bank/a post office/a supermarket?

Music of English

T 5.7 Listen and repeat. Copy the stress and intonation.

Excuse me! Is there a chemist's near here? Yes, it's over there.

Excuse me! Is there a baker's near here? Yes, it's on the corner.



6

Can you speak English?

can/can't/could/couldn't • was/were • Words that sound the same • On the phone

STARTER



1 Where do people speak these languages?

French Spanish German Italian
Portuguese Japanese English

They speak French in France and also in Canada.

2 Which languages can you speak? Tell the class.

I can speak English and a little Spanish. And of course, I can speak my language.

WHAT CAN YOU DO?

can/can't

1 Match the photos of the Brady family with the sentences.

- 1 ☐ She can walk now.
- 2 ☐ We can draw, but we can't write.
- 3 ☐ I can sing quite well.
- 4 ☐ 'Can you play the drums?'
'Yes, I can.' 'No, he can't!'
- 5 ☐ 'Can they dance?'
'Yes, they can. My dad's OK, and my
mum can dance flamenco really well.'

T 6.1 Listen and check.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Say all persons of *can* and *can't*.
What do you notice?
I can, you can, he... she... it... we... they...
I can't, you..., etc.

Pronunciation

- 2 **T 6.2** Listen and repeat these sentences.

I can speak French. = /kən/
 Can you speak French? = /kæn/
 Yes, I can. = /kæn/
 No, I can't. = /kɑ:nt/

- 3 Say these sentences. ● ● ● ● ● ●
 We can draw. She can't write.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 6.1 p141



a Lucía



b Dominic



c Eva

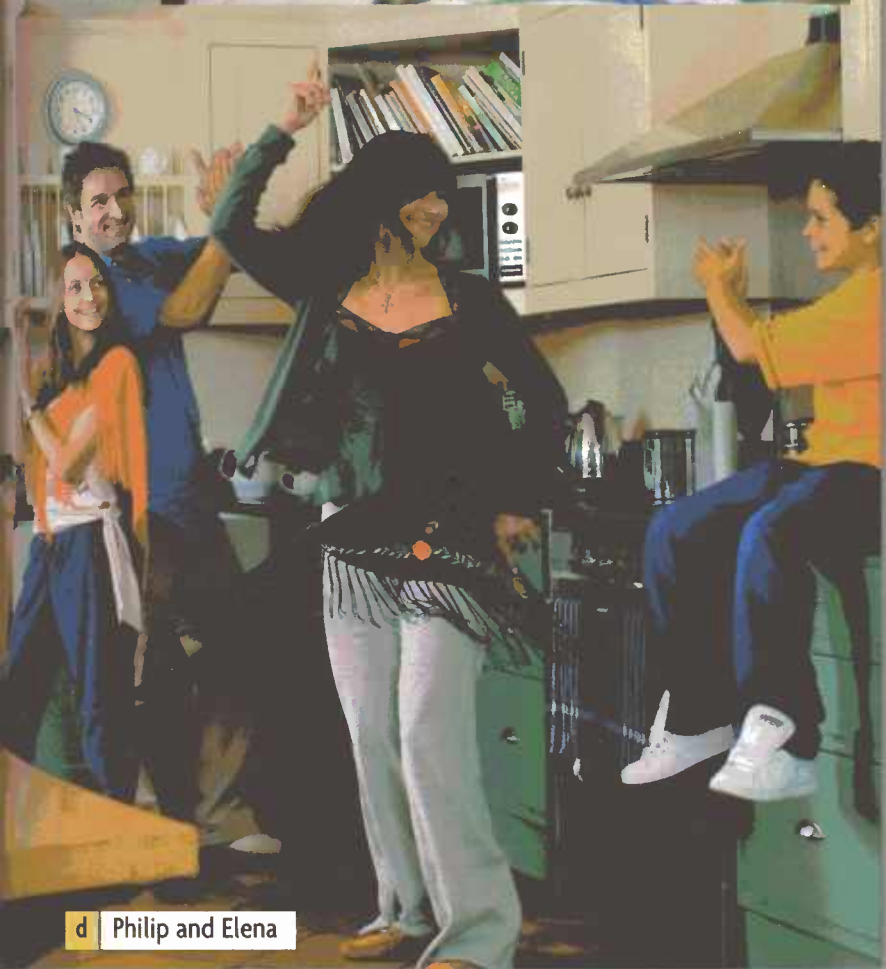
2 **T 6.3** Listen and complete the sentences with *can* or *can't* + verb.

- 1 I _____, but I _____.
- 2 He _____, but he _____.
- 3 '_____ you _____?' 'Yes, I _____.'
- 4 They _____, but they _____.
- 5 We _____ and we _____.
- 6 '_____ she _____?' 'No, she _____.'

T 6.3 Listen again and repeat.



e Ben and Ana



d Philip and Elena

PRACTICE

Lucía can't cook. Can you?

1 **T 6.4** Listen to Lucía and complete the chart. Put ✓ or X.

Can ... ?	Lucía	You	Partner
drive a car	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
speak French	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
speak Spanish	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
cook	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
play tennis	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
ski	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
swim	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
play the guitar	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
dance	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
use a computer	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Complete the chart about you.

3 Complete the chart about your partner. Ask and answer the questions.

Can you drive a car? No, I can't.

Can you ski? Yes, I can. But not very well.

Tell the class about you and your partner.

Louis can ski, but I can't.

What can computers do?

4 What can computers do? Discuss with a partner.

Can they ... ?

- ☐ translate
- ☐ check spellings
- ☐ write poetry
- ☐ feel ill
- ☐ speak English
- ☐ make music
- ☐ laugh
- ☐ think
- ☐ play chess
- ☐ have conversations
- ☐ hear
- ☐ fall in love

Imagine you live in 2050. What can/can't a computer do?

WHERE WERE YOU YESTERDAY?

was/were, can/could

T 6.5 Read and listen to the questions. Complete the answers.

Present

- What day is it today?
It's _____.
- What month is it now?
It's _____.
- Where are you now?
I'm in/at _____.
- Are you in England?
_____, I am. _____, I'm not.
- Can you swim?
_____, I can. _____, I can't.
- Can your teacher speak three languages?
Yes, _____ can. No, _____ can't.

Past

- What day was it yesterday?
It was _____.
- What month was it last month?
It was _____.
- Where were you yesterday?
I was in/at _____.
- Were you in England in 1999?
_____, I was. _____, I wasn't.
- Could you swim when you were five?
_____, I could. _____, I couldn't.
- Could your teacher speak English when he/she was seven?
Yes, _____ could. No, _____ couldn't.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the table with the past of *to be*.

	Positive	Negative
I	was	wasn't
You	were	weren't
He/She/It		
We		
They		

Pronunciation

2 **T 6.6** Listen and repeat.

It was /wəz/ Monday yesterday. We were /wə/ at school.
In short answers the pronunciation is different.

Was /wəz/ it hot? Yes, it was /wɒz/.

Were /wə/ you tired? but Yes, we were /wɜː/.

3 What is the past of *can*?

	Positive	Negative
I/You/He/She/It/We/They		

► Grammar Reference 6.1 and 6.2 p141

PRACTICE

Talking about you

1 Ask and answer questions with a partner.

Where were you ... ?

- at eight o'clock this morning
- at half past six yesterday evening
- at two o'clock this morning
- at this time yesterday
- at ten o'clock last night
- last Saturday evening

2 Complete Emma and Marco's conversation, using *was*, *were*, *wasn't*, *weren't*, or *couldn't*.



E _____ you at Charlotte's party last Saturday?

M Yes, I _____.

E _____ it good?

M Well, it _____ OK.

E _____ there many people?

M Yes, there _____.

E _____ Pascal there?

M No, he _____. And where _____ you? Why _____ you there?

E Oh ... I _____ go because I _____ at Sergio's party! It _____ brilliant!

M Oh!

T 6.7 Listen and check. Listen for the pronunciation of *was* and *were*. Practise with a partner.

Four geniuses!

3 What are these people famous for? Discuss with a partner.



Salvador Dalí



Charlotte Brontë



Tiger Woods



Albert Einstein

4 Look at these sentences.

*I was born in London in 1983. I could read when I was four.
My sister couldn't read until she was seven.*

Match lines in A, B, and C and make similar sentences about the four geniuses.

A	B	C
Salvador Dalí	the USA / 1975	play golf / three
Charlotte Brontë	Germany / 1879	paint / one
Tiger Woods	England / 1816	write stories / four
Albert Einstein	Spain / 1904	couldn't speak / eight

5 Ask and answer questions with a partner about the geniuses.

When was Salvador Dalí born?

Where was he born?

How old was he when he could ... ?

6 Work in groups. Ask and answer the questions.

1 Where were you born?

2 When were you born?

3 How old were you when you could ... ?

- walk • talk • read • swim
- ride a bike • use a computer • speak a foreign language

Check it

7 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> I don't can use a computer. | 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Was they at the party? |
| <input type="checkbox"/> I can't use a computer. | <input type="checkbox"/> Were they at the party? |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> I can to speak English very well. | 6 <input type="checkbox"/> She was no at home. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> I can speak English very well. | <input type="checkbox"/> She wasn't at home. |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> I'm sorry. I can't go to the party. | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> I'm sorry. I no can go to the party. | |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> He could play chess when he was five. | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> He can play chess when he was five. | |

READING AND SPEAKING

Talented teenagers

1 Do you like singing? Can you sing well?
Do you like reading? What do you read?
Look at the teenagers in the photographs.
What can they do?

2 Work in two groups.

Group A Read about the singer.

Group B Read about the writer.

3 Answer the questions about Joss or Christopher.

- 1 How old is she/he?
- 2 What can she/he do?
- 3 Where was she/he born?
- 4 Where does she/he live?
- 5 Who does she/he live with?
- 6 Does she/he go to school?
- 7 What could or couldn't she/he do when she/he was very young?
- 8 Why were her/his parents surprised?
- 9 Where was she/he last month?
- 10 Why was she/he there?

4 Find a partner from the other group.
Tell your partner about your teenager,
using your answers.

5 What is the same about Joss and Christopher? What is different? Discuss with your partner.

They're talented teenagers.

Joss is a singer.
Christopher's a writer.

Roleplay

6 Work with a partner.

Student A is a journalist.

Student B is Joss or Christopher.

Ask and answer questions, using the questions in exercise 3 to help you.

Hello, Joss! Can I ask you
one or two questions?

Of course.

First of all, how old are you?

I'm seventeen.

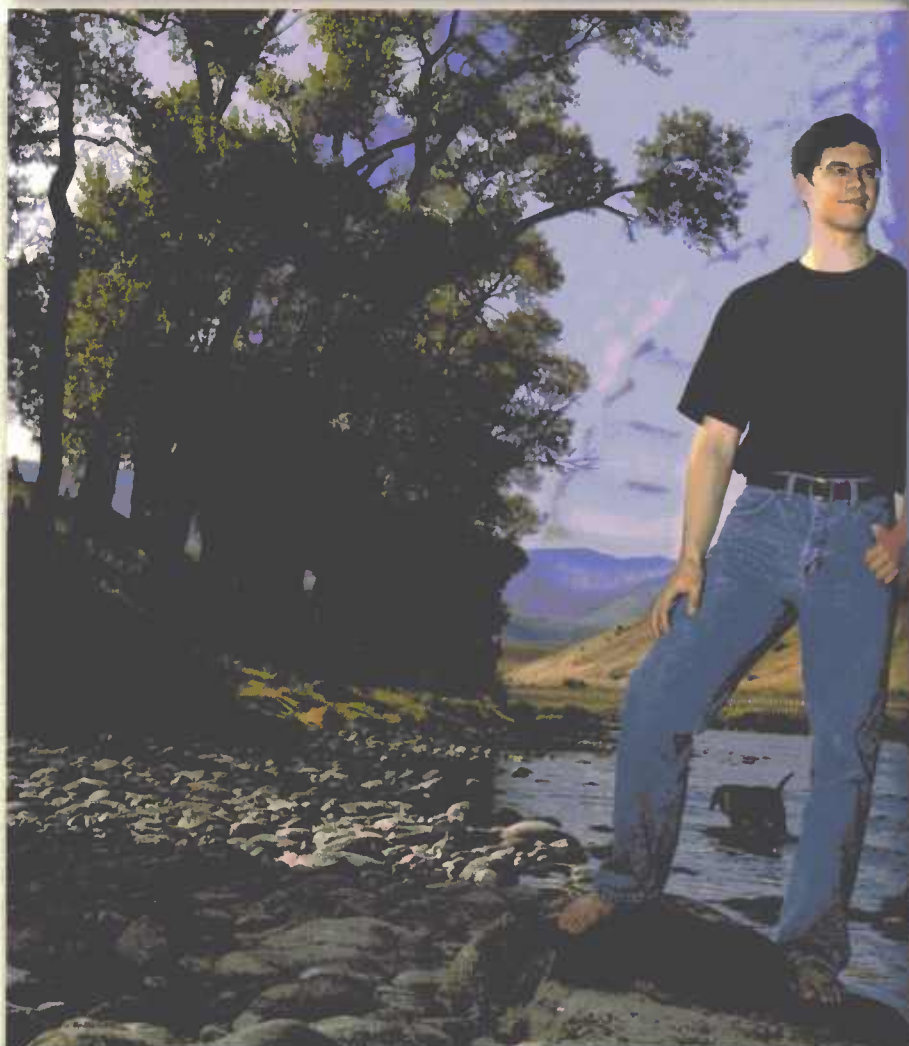
THE SOUL SINGER

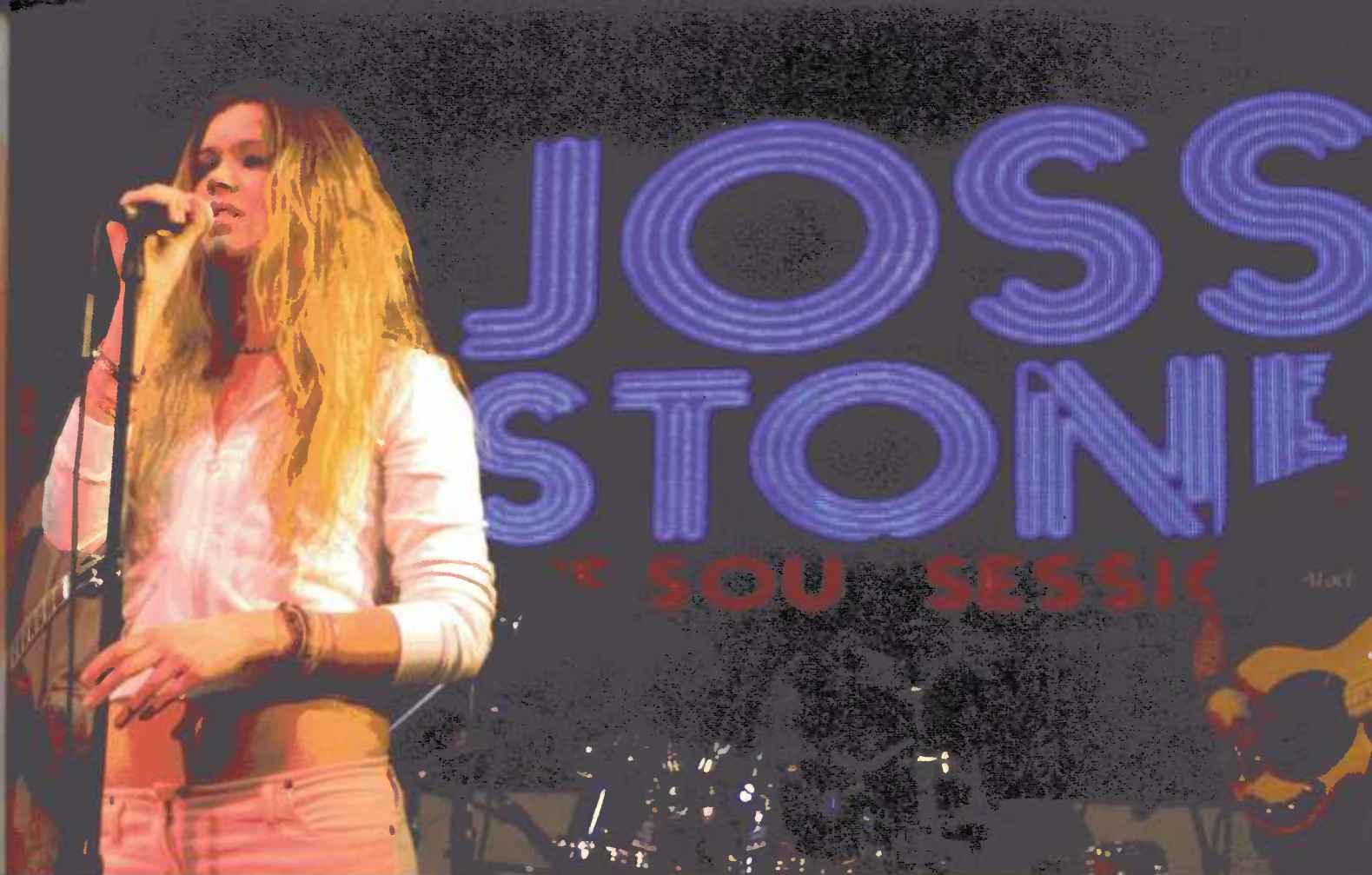
CAN A WHITE GIRL SING SOUL? CAN A TEENAGER SING THE BLUES? PEOPLE THINK THAT JOSS STONE CAN.

Joss was born in Devon in the south of England. She lives with her family in a small village in the English countryside. But she also works in New York. She sings at the Beacon Theatre on Broadway. She is a shy seventeen-year-old with a fantastic voice.

Joss could sing very well when she was a little girl. Her parents couldn't believe it. She says 'No-one in our family can sing – only me. My mum can't sing a note!' Later, at school, her friends couldn't understand soul music. 'I love it, but they don't. They prefer pop music.'

Last month she was in New York to make a record. 'I was worried about it. But people like it, so I'm very happy at the moment.'





THE FANTASY WRITER

CAN A FIFTEEN-YEAR-OLD WRITE A BESTSELLER?
CAN A TEENAGER'S BOOK SELL MORE THAN HARRY POTTER?
CHRISTOPHER PAOLINI'S ANSWER IS YES.

Christopher was born in Montana, USA. He lives with his family in Paradise Valley. They have a small house by the river. His parents teach him and his sister at home, they don't go to school. Christopher loves language and he loves books. Every day he sits for hours at his computer, he just can't stop writing.

This is surprising because when Christopher was very young he couldn't read very well. Then one day – 'It was magic,' he says, 'I could read, I could see the characters.' Suddenly there were people, conversations and stories in his head. His first book was a fantasy called *Eragon*. His parents were surprised that it was so good.

Last month Christopher was in New York for interviews. Why? Because *Eragon* was number one in the bestseller lists!



VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Words that sound the same

- 1 Look at the sentences. What do you notice about these words?

I **write** with my **right** hand.
I have a **black eye**.
No, he doesn't **know** the answer.

- 2 Find the words in **B** that have the same pronunciation as the words in **A**.

A hear write wear see eye
there by for hour
know son four
too I sun our
sea where buy here
right no two their **B**

- 3 Correct the two spelling mistakes in each sentence.

- hear see
1 I can ~~here~~ you, but I can't ~~see~~ you.
2 Their are three bedrooms in hour house.
3 I don't no wear Jill lives.
4 My sun lives near the see.
5 Don't where that hat, by a new one!
6 Know, eye can't come to your party.
7 You were write. Sally can't come four dinner.
8 There daughter could right when she was three.
9 I no my answers are write.

T 6.8 Listen and repeat.

- 4 Look at the phonetic symbols. Write the two words with the same pronunciation.

- 1 /nəʊ/ _____
2 /sʌn/ _____
3 /tu:/ _____
4 /raɪt/ _____
5 /hɪə/ _____
6 /weə/ _____

►► **Phonetic symbols p159**

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

On the phone

- 1 Here are the names and addresses of some people you want to phone.

Lisa Jefferson
Freelance Journalist

89 Franklin Street
Cambridge
BOSTON

Cambridge Herald

tel: _____
email: ljefferson@usa.net

Yoshi Ishigawa
BUSINESSMAN

659 Tearaimizu-cho
KYOTO 604-8152
JAPAN

Tel: _____
email: ishigawa@nkg.or.jp

Travel Peru

Fernando Diaz
Tourist guide

Jiron Junín 612
Lima PERU

Tel: _____
email: flmdiaz@travel.co.pe

- T 6.9** Listen to the operator. Answer her questions to get Lisa's telephone number.

Operator International Directory Enquiries.
Which country, please?
You The USA.
Operator And which town?
You _____.
Operator Can I have the last name, please?
You _____.
Operator And the initial?
You _____.
Operator What's the address?
You _____.
Recorded message The number you require is _____.

Roleplay

- 2 Work with a partner. Take it in turns to be the operator. Make conversations to find out the telephone numbers of Yoshi and Fernando.

Student A Go to p148. **Student B** Go to p150.

3 Complete conversations 1–3 with these lines. Check answers with a partner.

- 1 Can I take a message?
- 2 Great! I'll see you on Sunday at ten, then. Bye!
- 3 This is Jo.
- 4 Oh, never mind. Perhaps next time. Bye!
- 5 There's a party at my house on Saturday. Can you come?
- 6 No, it isn't. I'll just get her.
- 7 I'll ring back later.
- 8 Can I speak to the manager, please?



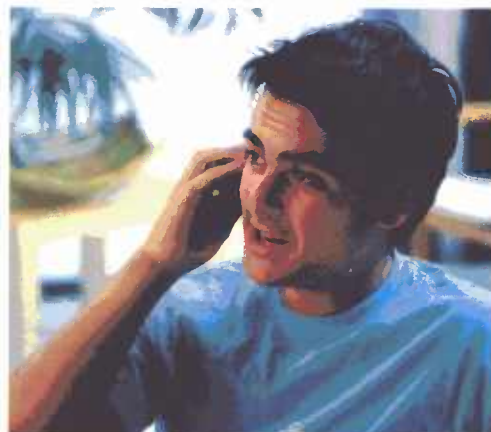
I'll = I will
will = an offer or promise
I'll help you



- 1 A Hello.
B Hello. Can I speak to Jo, please?
A _____
B Oh! Hi, Jo. This is Nicola. Is Sunday still OK for tennis?
A Yes, that's fine.
B _____!
A Bye!



- 2 A Hello.
B Hello. Is that Emma?
A _____
...
C Hello, Emma here.
B Hi, Emma. It's Marco. Listen!
_____?
C Oh sorry, Marco. I can't. It's my sister's wedding.
B _____!
C Bye!



- 3 A Good morning. Dixons Electrical. How can I help you?
B Good morning. _____?
A I'm afraid Mr Smith isn't in his office at the moment. _____?
B Don't worry. _____.
A All right. Goodbye.
B Goodbye.



4 T 6.10 Listen and check.

Music of English

T 6.11 Listen and practise the telephone expressions.

Can I speak to Jo please?

I'll ring back later.

Is that Emma?

Can I take a message?

I'll just get her.

5 Practise the conversations. Make similar conversations with your partner.

►► WRITING Formal letters p117



7

Then and now

Past Simple 1 – regular verbs • Irregular verbs • Words that go together • What's the date?

STARTER



When were your grandparents and great-grandparents born? Where were they born? Do you know all their names? What were their jobs? If you know, tell the class.

WHEN I WAS YOUNG

Past Simple – regular verbs

- 1 Look at the photos. Do you know anything about the film star Shirley Temple?
- 2 **T 7.1** Read and listen to Shirley Temple Black's life now. Complete text **A** with the verbs you hear.
- 3 **T 7.2** Read and listen to text **B** about Shirley's life a long time ago.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Find examples of the past of *is* and *can* in text **B**.
- 2 Complete the sentences with *work* in the correct form.
Now she _____ at Stanford University.
When she was a child she _____ in films.
- 3 Find the Past Simple of *start*, *dance*, *like*, and *retire* in text **B**. How do we form the Past Simple of regular verbs?

▶▶ Grammar Reference 7.1 p142

A

Shirley TEMPLE BLACK

Shirley Temple Black _____ a retired politician. She _____ with her husband in California. She _____ cooking and playing with her grandchildren. Also, she sometimes _____ at Stanford University for the Institute of International Studies. She _____ there every month and _____ foreign ministers. They _____ world problems.



B

THE CHILD STAR

When she was very young, Shirley was a famous movie star. She started in films when she was only three years old! She could act, she was a good singer and she also danced well. She liked acting very much, and worked in over 50 films. But when she was 20, she retired from the cinema.



C WHY DID SHE STOP ACTING?

From the age of three Shirley _____ very hard for 20th Century Fox.

'I _____ in three or four movies every year. Fortunately I _____ acting!' And the public _____ her and her films. The films _____ over \$35 million.

She says, 'I didn't go to school. I _____ at the studio and my mother _____ after me there.'

So why did she stop acting? When she was 12, she finally _____ school. She was a good student and she _____ to go to university. She was still a good actor, but her films weren't so popular, because she wasn't a little girl any more. She _____ to change her career. It was a big change – from actor to politician. She says, 'I was a politician for 35 years, but people only remember my movies!'



- 4 **T 7.3** What is the past form of these verbs? Listen and practise saying them.

like	look	work	earn	love
study	act	decide	want	start

- 5 **T 7.4** Read and listen to text **C**. Complete the text, using the Past Simple form of the verbs in exercise 4.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- Find a question with *did* and a negative with *didn't* in text **C**.
- Look at these questions.
Where **does** she work now?
Where **did** she work in 1950?
Did is the past of *do* and *does*. We use *did* to form a question in the Past Simple.
- We use *didn't* (= *did not*) to form the negative.
She **didn't** go to school.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 7.2 p142

- 6 Complete the questions about Shirley.

- When did she start in films?
When she was only three years old.
- How many films _____ she _____ in?
Over 50.
- Who _____ she _____ for?
20th Century Fox Film Studios.
- How much money _____ her films _____?
Over \$35 million.
- Where _____ she _____?
At the film studio. She didn't go to school.
- When _____ she _____ school?
When she was 12.
- What _____ she _____ to do?
Go to university.
- Why _____ she _____ acting?
Because her movies weren't so popular any more.

T 7.5 Listen and check. Practise the questions and answers with a partner.

PRACTICE

Talking about you

- 1 Complete the sentences with *did*, *was*, or *were*.

- Where _____ you born?
Where _____ your mother born?
- When _____ you start school?
- When _____ you learn to read and write?
- Who _____ your first teacher?
- What _____ your favourite subject?
- Where _____ you live when you _____ a child?
- _____ you live in a house or a flat?

- 2 Stand up! Ask two or three students the questions in exercise 1.

- 3 Tell the class some of the information you learned.

Enrico was born in ...

His mother ...

He started school ...

Pronunciation

- 1 **T 7.6** Listen to three different pronunciations of *-ed*.

/t/	/d/	/ɪd/
<i>worked</i>	<i>lived</i>	<i>started</i>

- 2 **T 7.7** Listen and write the Past Simple verbs on the chart.

/t/	/d/	/ɪd/
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

Practise saying them.

THE YEAR I WAS BORN

Irregular verbs

- 1 Look at the list of irregular verbs on p158. Write the Past Simple form of the verbs in the box. Which one isn't irregular?

be _____	begin _____	come _____	get _____	sing _____
leave _____	have _____	die _____	become _____	
win _____	make _____	buy _____	sell _____	

- 2 **T 7.8** Listen and repeat the Past Simple forms.

- 3 **T 7.9** James was born in 1984. Listen to his conversation with his parents and complete the sentences. Then listen again and check.

1984

... the year I was born

James was born on 24 January, 1984, in Hong Kong. His parents _____ Hong Kong that year and _____ back to Britain. His father _____ a job in London.

POLITICS

In Britain, Margaret Thatcher _____ Europe's first woman prime minister. US President Ronald Reagan _____ another four years in the White House. The Soviet leader Yuri Andropov _____ after only a year as leader.

SPORTS

American athlete Carl Lewis _____ four gold medals at the Los Angeles Olympics. The Soviet Union didn't go to the Olympics that year. Tiger Woods _____ junior golf champion at the age of eight.

SCIENCE

Apple Macintosh _____ a new personal computer and millions of people _____ one.

MUSIC

Michael Jackson's *Thriller* _____ 43 million albums. Madonna _____ *Holiday*. And Paul McCartney, Tina Turner and David Bowie all _____ hit records that year.



- 4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about the year James was born.
- 1 When/James and his parents leave Hong Kong?
 - 2 Where/his father get a job?
 - 3 How many medals/Carl Lewis win?
 - 4 What/Apple Macintosh make?
 - 5 Which song/Madonna sing?
 - 6 How many albums/Michael Jackson's *Thriller* sell?
- 5 Make notes about the year you were born. Write about it. Tell the class.



PRACTICE

When did it happen?

- 1 Work in groups. Think of important events in history. When did they happen? Make a list, then make questions to ask the other groups.

When did the **Second World War** begin/end?

When did the first person walk on the **moon**?

What did you do?



last	night Monday week year	yesterday	morning afternoon evening	X last-afternoon X last-evening
------	---------------------------------	-----------	---------------------------------	------------------------------------

- 2 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions with *When did you last ...*? Ask another question for more information.

When did you **last** have a holiday?

Last August.

Where did you go?

To Spain.

- have a holiday
- watch a DVD
- go shopping
- take a photograph
- go to a party
- talk on a mobile
- write an email
- get a present
- eat in a restaurant

Tell the class some things you learned about your partner.

Yukio had a holiday last August and she went to Italy.

Check it

- 3 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.
- 1 ☐ He bought some new shoes.
☐ He buyed some new shoes.
 - 2 ☐ Where did you go yesterday?
☐ Where you went yesterday?
 - 3 ☐ You see Jane last week?
☐ Did you see Jane last week?
 - 4 ☐ Did she get the job?
☐ Did she got the job?
 - 5 ☐ I went out yesterday evening.
☐ I went out last evening.
 - 6 ☐ He studied French at school.
☐ He studyed French at school.
 - 7 ☐ What had you for breakfast?
☐ What did you have for breakfast?
 - 8 ☐ I was in New York the last week.
☐ I was in New York last week.

▶▶ WRITING Describing a holiday p118

READING AND SPEAKING

Two famous firsts

1 Translate these words.

nouns

airshow
fighter jet
flight
experiences
satellite

verbs

break a record
travel
disappear
join
survive
crash

adjectives

excellent
dangerous
secret

2 Look at the texts and complete these sentences.

Amelia Mary Earhart was the first _____.

Yuri Gagarin was the first _____.

3 Work in two groups.

Group A Read about Amelia Earhart.

Group B Read about Yuri Gagarin.

4 Are the sentences true (✓) or false (X) about your person?
Correct the false sentences.

- 1 He/She came from a rich family.
- 2 He/She had a short but exciting life.
- 3 He/She fought in a World War.
- 4 He/She wanted to be a pilot when he/she was a child.
- 5 He/She flew fighter jets.
- 6 He/She married, but didn't have any children.
- 7 He/She travelled to Europe to talk about his/her experiences.
- 8 He/She died in a plane crash.

5 Find a partner from the other group. Compare Amelia Earhart and Yuri Gagarin, using your answers.

6 Complete the questions about the other person.
Then ask and answer them with your partner.

About Amelia Earhart

- 1 Where ... she born?
- 2 What ... she study first?
- 3 When ... she first ... up in a plane?
- 4 When ... she ... her first record?
- 5 ... she marry? ... she ... any children?
- 6 What ... she do in 1935?
- 7 Where ... her plane disappear?

About Yuri Gagarin

- 8 Where ... he born?
- 9 When ... he see his first plane?
- 10 Why ... he ... the Russian Air Force?
- 11 Why ... the doctors choose Yuri to be an astronaut?
- 12 What ... he do in 1961?
- 13 Why ... he ... around the world?
- 14 How ... he die?

What do you think?

Name some famous people from history. What did they do?

Two



famous firsts

Amelia Mary Earhart AMERICAN (1897 – 1937)

The first woman to fly across the Atlantic

Her early years

Amelia was born in her grandparents' house in Kansas. Her parents didn't have any money, but her grandparents were rich and sent her to the best schools. At 20 she decided to study nursing and worked in a hospital in World War I. When she was 23, she visited an airshow and went up in a plane. At that moment, she knew that she wanted to be a pilot.

What she did

In 1920 flying was dangerous and people didn't think it was an activity for women. But Amelia had flying lessons, and a year later, she broke her first record – she flew up to 14,000 feet. She married at 34, but never had children. The next year she became the first woman (and the second person) to fly alone across the Atlantic. She was now famous, and she travelled around the world to talk about her experiences. And in 1935, when she was 38, she became the first person to fly alone across the Pacific.

Her last flight

When she was nearly 40, Amelia wanted to be the first woman to fly around the world. She began the 29,000 mile flight in Miami on 1 June 1937. On 2 July she was nearly at the end of her journey, when she and her plane disappeared near Howland Island in the Pacific Ocean.



Yuri Gagarin RUSSIAN (1934 – 1968)

The first man in space

His early years

Yuri was born on a farm and his family was very poor. As a teenager in World War II, he saw his first plane – a Russian fighter jet. At that moment, he knew that he wanted to be a pilot. He studied hard so that he could join a flying club. His teachers thought he was a natural pilot and told him to join the Russian Air Force.

What he did

He became an excellent pilot. And he was now a husband and father. But when the first Russian satellite went into space, he wanted to become an astronaut. After two years of secret training, the doctors chose Yuri because he was the best in all the tests. On 12 April 1961, when he was 27, he finally went into space. It was very dangerous, because the doctors didn't know if Yuri could survive the journey. When he came back to Earth he was famous, and he travelled around the world to talk about his experiences.

His last flight

He wanted to go into space again, so in 1967 he began training for the next space flight. He was also a test pilot for new Air Force aeroplanes. But the next year he died when his fighter jet crashed on a test flight. He was only 34.



VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

Words that go together

Verbs and nouns

- 1 Match a verb in A with a noun in B.
Sometimes there is more than one answer.

A	B
become	television
drink	a sandwich
drive	a bike
eat	a pilot
break	a car
cook	a meal
play	a lot of money
watch	the guitar
win	Spanish
speak	a record
ride	a cup of tea
earn	a medal

Ask and answer questions.

Do you drink tea in the morning?

No, I don't. I drink coffee.

When did you last eat a sandwich?

This morning./ Yesterday./ Last week.

Compound nouns

- 3 Match a noun in A with a noun in B.
Do we write one word or two?

post office

homework

A	B
orange	paper
railway	room
swimming	pool
hand	juice
boy	park
news	star
film	card
birthday	station
washing	machine
living	friend
car	bag

T 7.10 Listen, check, and repeat.

- 4 Test the other students!

This is where we can go swimming.

A swimming pool!

I buy this every day and read it.

A newspaper.

- 5 T 7.11 Listen to four conversations. What are they about? Which compound nouns do you hear?

- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

Look at the tapescript on p130.
Practise the four conversations
with a partner.

Prepositions

- 2 Fill the gaps with the correct preposition.

- I like listening to music.
- I went to the beach with my friends.
- We went to Spain on holiday last year.
- She travelled around the world.
- I get up at 11 o'clock on Sundays.
- My father works in an office in the town centre.
- Our town has a lot of tourists in summer.
- My parents are at home at the moment.
- What's on television this evening?
- I wrote an email to my daughter.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

What's the date?

1 Write the correct word below the numbers.

fourth	twelfth	sixth	twentieth	second	thirtieth
thirteenth	thirty-first	fifth	seventeenth	tenth	
sixteenth	first	third	twenty-first		

1st

2nd

3rd

4th

5th

6th

10th

12th

13th

16th

17th

20th

21st

30th

31st

T 7.12 Listen and practise saying the ordinals.

2 Ask and answer questions with a partner about the months of the year.

Which is the first month?

January.



We write: 3/4/1999 or 3 April 1999

We say: 'The third of April, nineteen ninety-nine.'
or: 'April the third, nineteen ninety-nine.'

Notice how we say these years:

1900 'nineteen hundred'

1905 'nineteen oh five'

2001 'two thousand and one'

2012 'two thousand and twelve', or 'twenty twelve'

3 Practise saying these dates.

19/12/83

1 April

19 November

3/10/99

2 March

23 June

31/5/2000

17 September

29/2/76

15/7/2007

T 7.13 Listen and check.

4 **T 7.14** Listen and write the dates you hear.

5 Ask and answer the questions with your partner.

- 1 What's the date today?
- 2 When did this school course start? When does it end?
- 3 When's Christmas Day?
- 4 When's Valentine's Day?
- 5 When's Mother's Day this year?
- 6 When's your birthday?
- 7 What century is it now?
- 8 What are the dates of public holidays in your country?



8

A date to remember

Past Simple 2 – negatives – ago • Spelling and silent letters • Special occasions

STARTER



What is the Past Simple of these verbs? Most of them are irregular.

eat drink drive fly listen to make ride take watch wear

FAMOUS INVENTIONS

Past Simple negatives – ago

- 1 Match the verbs from the Starter with the photos.
- 2 Work in groups. What year was it a hundred years ago? Ask and answer questions about the things in the photos. What did people do? What didn't they do?

Did people drive cars a hundred years ago?

Yes, I think they did.

I'm not so sure.

No, they didn't.

- 3 Tell the class the things you think people did and didn't do.

We think people drove cars, but they didn't watch TV.

Getting information

- 4 When were the things in the photos invented? Ask and answer with a partner.

Student A Go to p149.

Student B Go to p150.

A When were cars invented?

B In ...

A That's ... years ago.



1

television



2

Coca-Cola



3

phone calls



4

cars



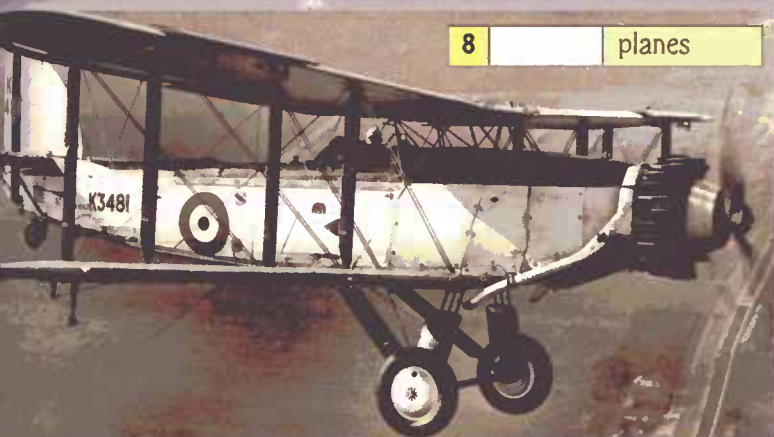
5 records



6 hamburgers



7 photographs



8 planes



9 bikes



10 jeans

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Write the Past Simple forms.

Present Simple	Past Simple
I live in London.	I lived in London.
He lives in London.	
Do you live in London?	
Does she live in London?	
I don't live in London.	
He doesn't live in London.	

2 Complete these sentences.

The year 2000 was _____ years ago.

The year 1984 was _____ years ago.

►► Grammar Reference 8.1 and 8.2 p142

PRACTICE

Time expressions

1 Make correct time expressions.

in

_____ seven o'clock	_____ the morning
_____ Saturday	_____ Sunday evening
_____ night	_____ September
_____ 2002	_____ weekends
_____ summer	_____ the nineteenth century

on

at

2 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions with *When ... ?* Use a time expression and *ago* in the answer.

When did you get up?

At seven o'clock, three hours ago.

When did this term start?

In September, two months ago.

When did ... ?

- you get up
- you have breakfast
- you arrive at school
- you start learning English
- you start at this school
- this term start
- you last use a computer
- you learn to ride a bicycle
- your parents get married
- you last have a coffee break

3 Tell the class about your day so far. Begin like this.

I got up at seven o'clock and had breakfast. I left the house at ...

PRACTICE

Three inventions

- 1 Look at the texts. What are the three inventions?
- 2 **T 8.1** The dates in the texts are *all* incorrect. Read and listen, and correct the dates.

Daguerre didn't start his experiments in the 1920s. He started them in the 1820s.

- 3 Make these sentences negative. Then give the correct answers.

1 Daguerre invented the bicycle.
*He didn't invent the bicycle.
He invented the photograph.*

2 Daguerre gave his idea to the French government.

3 Mary Anderson lived in New York City.

4 All cars had windscreen wipers by 1916.

5 Leonardo da Vinci made the first bicycle.

6 Kirkpatrick Macmillan came from France.

T 8.2 Listen and check. Practise the stress and intonation.

- 4 Work with a partner. Make more incorrect sentences about the texts. Give them to a partner to correct.

Did you know that?

- 5 **T 8.3** Read and listen to the conversations. Then listen and repeat.

A Did you know that Marco Polo brought spaghetti back from China?
B Really? He didn't! That's incredible!
A Well, it's true!

C Did you know that Napoleon was afraid of cats?
D He wasn't! I don't believe it!
C Well, it's true!

- 6 Work with a partner.

Student A Go to p149.

Student B Go to p151.

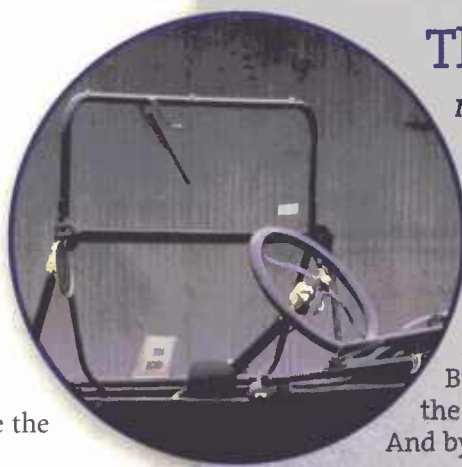
Make similar conversations.



The photograph

LOUIS DAGUERRE FROM FRANCE

Louis Daguerre was a painter for the French opera. But he wanted to make a new type of picture. He started his experiments in the 1820s. Twelve years later he invented the photograph. He sold his idea to the French government in 1839 and the government gave it to the world. Daguerre called the first photographs 'daguerreotypes'. They became popular very fast. By 1840, there were 70 daguerreotype studios in New York City.



The windscreen wiper

MARY ANDERSON FROM THE USA

Mary Anderson often visited New York City by car. In winter she noticed that when it rained or snowed, drivers got out of their cars all the time to clean their windows. In 1893 she began designing something to clean the windows from inside the car.

People, especially men, laughed at her idea. But they didn't laugh for long. She invented the windscreen wiper in 1905. And by 1906 all American cars had them.

The bicycle

KIRKPATRICK MACMILLAN FROM SCOTLAND

Long ago in 1540, Leonardo da Vinci drew a design for the modern bicycle. But the first person to make a bicycle was Kirkpatrick Macmillan in 1789. He lived in Scotland, so people didn't hear about his invention for a long time. Twenty years later, another bicycle came from France. In 1825 the bike became cheap and everyone could have one. Now people, especially women, could travel to the next town. It helped them find someone to marry!



LISTENING AND SPEAKING

How did you two meet?

- 1 Put the sentences in the correct order. There is more than one answer!

- ☐ They got married.
- ☐ They went out for a year.
- ☐ They fell in love.
- ☐ They had two children.
- ☒ Jack and Jill met at a party.
- ☐ They got engaged.
- ☐ They got divorced.

- 2 Look at the photos of two couples and read the introductions to their stories. What do you think happened next?

- 3 **T 8.4** Listen to them talking. Were your ideas correct?

- 4 Answer the questions about Carly and Ned, and Eric and Lori.

- 1 When did both couples meet?
- 2 What did Carly think of Ned?
- 3 What did Ned's girlfriend think of Carly? Why?
- 4 Where did Eric and Lori's mothers meet?
- 5 Why didn't Eric and Lori want to meet?
- 6 What did Eric and Lori think when they met?
- 7 Do both couples have children?

- 5 Who said these sentences? What was it about?

Write **C**, **N**, **E**, or **L** in the boxes.

- a ☐ I cried and cried.
- b ☐ Our story is easy. We didn't do anything.
- c ☐ It was a big mistake.
- d ☐ I just thought, 'No way.'
- e ☐ ... all the old feelings came back.
- f ☐ I took my sister with me.
- g ☐ That was three years ago. Now I'm twenty-four, we're married ...
- h ☐ ... our wedding is in the fall*.

* fall (American English) = autumn (British English)

Speaking

- 6 Imagine you are one of the people. Tell the story of how you met your husband/wife.
- 7 Look at these questions. Tell a partner about you and your family.
 - 1 Are you married or do you have a girlfriend/boyfriend? How did you meet?
 - 2 When did your parents or grandparents meet? Where? How?

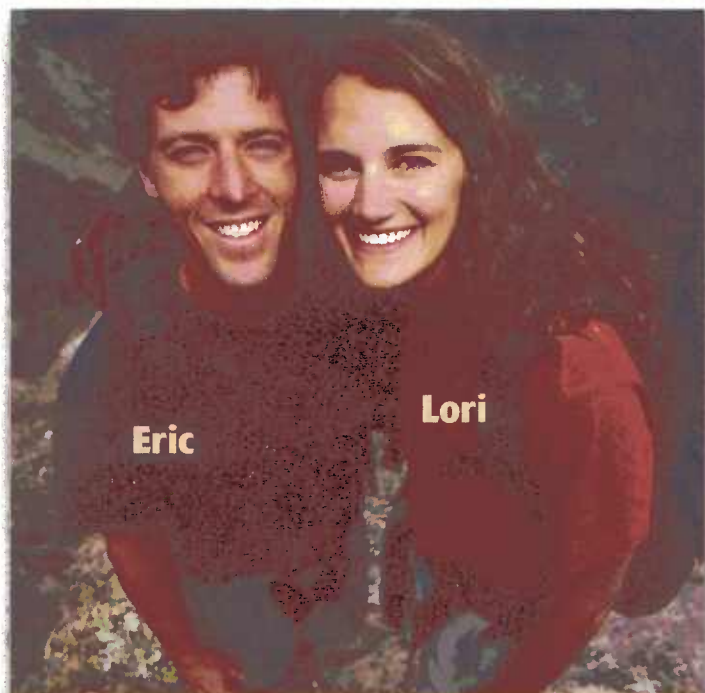
► **SONG** *I just called to say I love you*
Teacher's Book **p144**

► **WRITING** About a friend **p119**



My very first love

Many people never forget the first person they fall in love with. Carly was 10 years old when she fell in love with sixteen-year-old Ned, but ...



Do mothers know best?

Parents usually want their children to meet a nice person and get married. Eric's mom wanted to help him meet someone, so ...

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Spelling and silent letters

- 1 There are many silent letters in English words. Practise saying these words.

know /nəʊ/

talk /tɔ:k/

girl /gɜ:l/

thought /θɔ:t/

Cross out the silent letters in these words.

- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| 1 walk | 7 work |
| 2 listen | 8 hour |
| 3 autumn | 9 flight |
| 4 write | 10 could |
| 5 eight | 11 wrong |
| 6 island | 12 daughter |

T 8.5 Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

- 2 Look at the phonetic spelling of these words from exercise 1. Write the words.

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1 /wɜ:k/ | <u>work</u> |
| 2 /kʊd/ | _____ |
| 3 /'lɪsən/ | _____ |
| 4 /'ɔ:təm/ | _____ |
| 5 /raɪt/ | _____ |
| 6 /'aɪlənd/ | _____ |

- 3 Write the words. They all have silent letters.

- | | |
|--------------|-------|
| 1 /bɔ:n/ | _____ |
| 2 /bɔ:t/ | _____ |
| 3 /wɜ:ld/ | _____ |
| 4 /'ɑ:nsə/ | _____ |
| 5 /'kʌbəd/ | _____ |
| 6 /'krɪsməs/ | _____ |

T 8.6 Listen and practise saying the words.

- 4 Read these sentences aloud.

- He bought his daughter eight white horses for Christmas.
- I know you know the answer.
- They walked and talked for hours and hours on the island.
- Listen and answer the questions.
- The girl took the wrong flight.
- The world is lovely in autumn.

T 8.7 Listen and check.

►► **Phonetic symbols p159**

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Special occasions

- 1 Look at the list of days. Which are special? Match the special days with the pictures.

birthday	yesterday	Easter Day
Mother's Day	Hallowe'en	New Year's Eve
today	Monday	Valentine's Day
weekend	Thanksgiving	Friday
wedding day	tomorrow	Christmas Day

- 2 Which days do you celebrate in your country? What do you do?

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| • make a cake | • wear special clothes |
| • give cards and presents | • watch fireworks |
| • have a meal | • have a party |
| • go out with friends | • give flowers or chocolates |





6



7



8



9

3 Complete the conversations. What are the occasions?

1 Happy _____ to you.
Happy _____ to you.
Happy _____, dear Grandma,
Happy _____ to you.

2 A Did you get any _____ cards?
B Yes, I did. Listen to this.
Roses are red. Violets are blue.
You are my _____
And I love you.
A Wow! Do you know who it's from?
B No idea!

3 A Wake up, Mummy! Happy _____!
B Thank you, darling. Oh, what beautiful flowers, and a cup of tea!
A And I made you a card! Look!
B It's lovely. What a clever boy!

4 A Congratulations!
B Thank you very much!
A When's the big day?
B Pardon?
A When's your _____ day?
B The 26th June. Didn't you get your invitation?

5 A It's midnight! Happy _____ everybody!
B Happy _____!
C Happy _____!

6 A Thank goodness! It's Friday!
B Yeah. Have a nice _____!
A Same to you.

7 A Ugh! Work again. I hate Monday mornings!
B Me too. Did you have a good _____?
A Yes, I did. It was great.

T 8.8 Listen and check.

Music of English

Work with a partner. Choose a conversation from exercise 3. Learn it by heart. Pay attention to stress and intonation. Act it to the class.



9 Food you like!

Count and uncount nouns • I like/I'd like • some/any • much/many • Food • Polite requests

STARTER



What's your favourite • fruit? • vegetable? • drink?

Write your answers. Compare them with a partner, then with the class.

FOOD AND DRINK

Count and uncount nouns

- 1 Match the food and drink with the photos.
Which list has plural nouns, A or B?

A			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> p	apple juice	<input type="checkbox"/>	pizza
<input type="checkbox"/>	tea	<input type="checkbox"/>	pasta
<input type="checkbox"/>	coffee	<input type="checkbox"/>	cheese
<input type="checkbox"/>	milk	<input type="checkbox"/>	fish
<input type="checkbox"/>	beer	<input type="checkbox"/>	chocolate

B			
<input type="checkbox"/>	apples	<input type="checkbox"/>	peas
<input type="checkbox"/>	oranges	<input type="checkbox"/>	tomatoes
<input type="checkbox"/>	bananas	<input type="checkbox"/>	hamburgers
<input type="checkbox"/>	strawberries	<input type="checkbox"/>	chips
<input type="checkbox"/>	carrots	<input type="checkbox"/>	biscuits

- 2 **T 9.1** Listen to Daisy and Piers talking about what they like and don't like. Tick (✓) the food and drink that Daisy likes. What doesn't Piers like?
- 3 Who says these things? Write D or P.

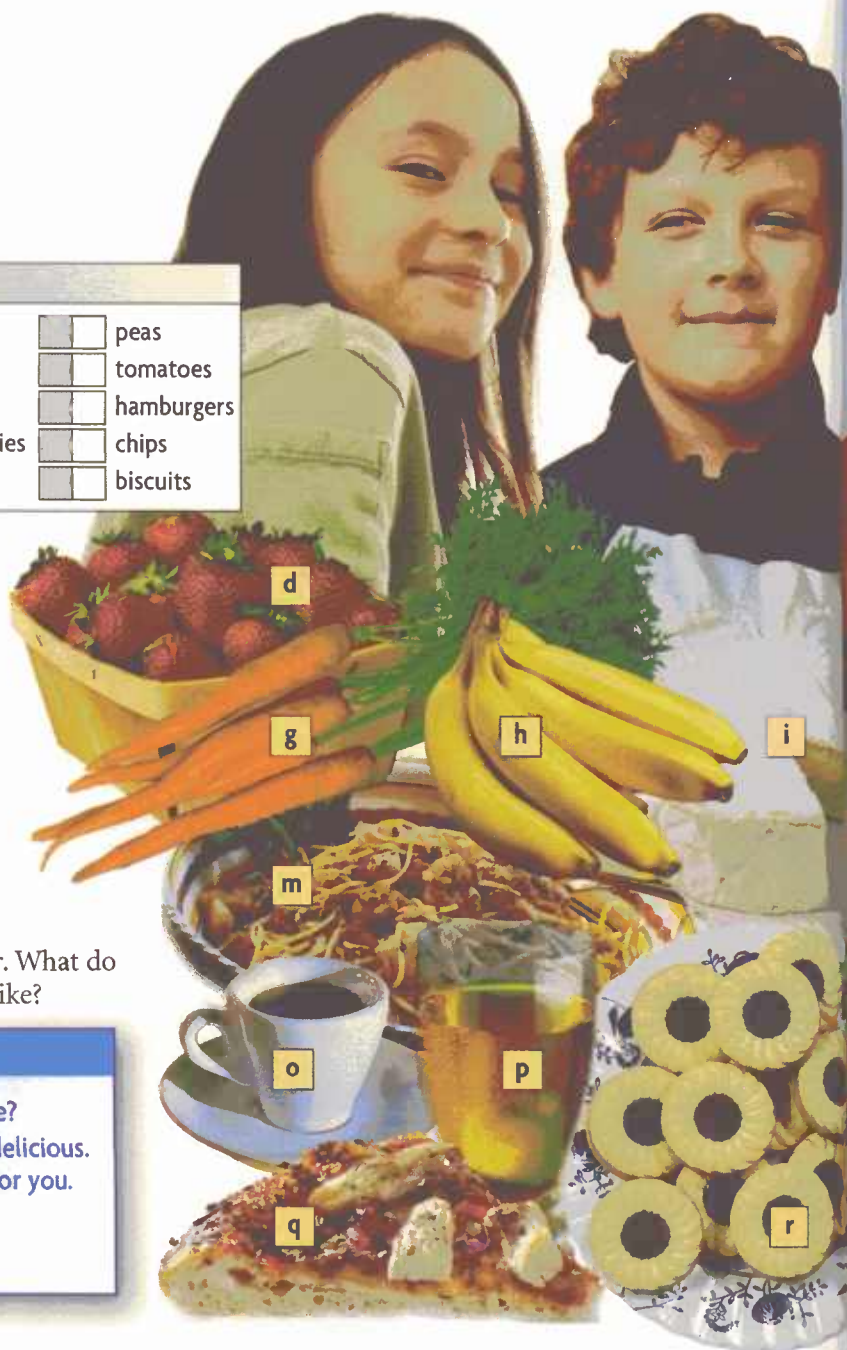
- ☐ I **don't like** coffee at all.
- ☐ I **like** orange juice but I **don't like** oranges.
- ☐ I **don't like** fruit very much at all.
- ☐ I **quite like** bananas.
- ☐ I **like** all fruit.
- ☐ I **like** vegetables, especially carrots and peas.

- 4 Talk about the lists of food and drink with a partner. What do you like? What do you quite like? What don't you like?

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Look at the pairs of sentences. What is the difference?
- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Chocolate is delicious. | Strawberries are delicious. |
| Apple juice is good for you. | Apples are good for you. |
- 2 Can we count apple juice? Can we count apples?

▶▶ Grammar Reference 9.1 p143



I like ... and I'd like ...

- 1 **T 9.2** Read and listen to the conversation between Piers and Daisy's mum.

M Hello, Piers. Would you like some tea or coffee?

P I'd like a cold drink, if that's OK.

M Of course. Would you like some orange juice?

P Yes, please. I'd love some.

M And would you like a chocolate biscuit?

P Oh, yes, please! Thank you very much.

M You're welcome.

- 2 Practise the conversation in exercise 1 with a partner. Then have similar conversations about other food and drink.

Would you like some tea?

No, thanks. I don't like tea very much.



GRAMMAR SPOT

- Look at the sentences. What is the difference?
Do you like tea? | Would you like some tea?
I like biscuits. | I'd like a biscuit. (I'd = I would)
Which sentences mean *Do you want / I want ...*?
- Look at these sentences.
I'd like some bananas. (plural noun)
I'd like some mineral water. (uncount noun)
We use *some* with both plural and uncount nouns.
- Look at these questions.
Would you like some chips? | But Are there any chips?
Can I have some tea? | Is there any tea?
We use *some* not *any* when we request and offer things.
We use *any* not *some* in other questions and negatives.

►► Grammar Reference 9.2 and 9.3 p143

PRACTICE

Questions and answers

- 1 Choose *Would / Do you like ... ?* or *I / I'd like ...*.

1 *Would / Do you like* a ham sandwich?
No, thanks. I'm not hungry.

2 *Do / Would you like* Ella?
Yes. She's very nice.

3 *Do / Would you like* a cold drink?
Yes, cola, please.

4 Can I help you?
Yes. *I / I'd like* some stamps, please.

5 What sports do you do?
Well, *I'd / I like* swimming very much.

6 Excuse me, are you ready to order?
Yes. *I / I'd like* a steak, please.

T 9.3 Listen and check. Practise with a partner.

- 2 **T 9.4** Listen and choose the correct answers.

- ☐ I like all sorts of fruit.
☐ Yes. I'd like some fruit, please.
- ☐ I'd like a book by John Grisham.
☐ I like books by John Grisham.
- ☐ I'd like a new bike.
☐ I like riding my bike.
- ☐ I'd like a cat but not a dog.
☐ I like cats, but I don't like dogs.
- ☐ I like Italian wine, especially red wine.
☐ We'd like a bottle of Italian red wine.
- ☐ No, thanks. I don't like ice-cream.
☐ I'd like some ice-cream, please.

T 9.5 Listen and check. Practise with a partner.

a or some?

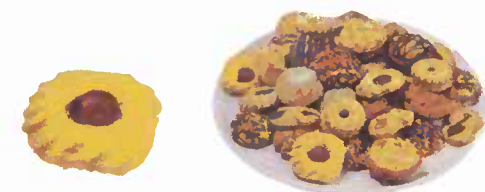
3 Write *a*, *an*, or *some*.

- 1 a strawberry
- 2 some fruit
- 3 _____ banana
- 4 _____ bread
- 5 _____ milk
- 6 _____ meat
- 7 _____ apple
- 8 _____ toast
- 9 _____ money
- 10 _____ dollar
- 11 _____ notebook
- 12 _____ homework

4 Write *a*, *an*, or *some*.



- 1 _____ egg 2 _____ eggs



- 3 _____ biscuit 4 _____ biscuits



- 5 _____ (cup of) coffee 6 _____ coffee



- 7 _____ ice-cream 8 _____ ice-cream

AT THE MARKET

some/any, much/many

1 What can you see at the market? Talk about the photo. Use *some/any* and *not much/not many*.

There's **some** cheese.

There aren't **many** cakes.

There isn't **much** bread.

There aren't **any** potatoes.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 We use *many* with count nouns in questions and negatives.
How **many** cakes are there? There **aren't many** cakes.
- 2 We use *much* with uncount nouns in questions and negatives.
How **much** bread is there? There **isn't much** bread.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 9.4 p143

2 Read the shopping list. Ask and answer questions about what there is in the market.

Things to buy

bread
eggs
milk
butter
apples
biscuits
potatoes
carrots
strawberries
tomatoes
apple juice
cakes
cheddar cheese
tea

Is there any bread?

Yes, there **is** some.

How much is there?

There **isn't much**.

Is there any milk?

No, there **isn't**.

Are there any apples?

Yes, there **are**.

How many are there?

A **lot**.

3 **T 9.6** Piers and his mum are at the market. Listen and tick (✓) the things they buy from the list above. What don't they buy?

4 Look at the tapescript on p132. Work in groups of three. Practise the conversation.



PRACTICE

much or many?

- Complete the questions using *much* or *many*.
 - How _____ people are there in the room?
 - How _____ petrol is there in the car?
 - How _____ money do you have in your pocket?
 - How _____ eggs are there in the cupboard?
 - How _____ milk is there in the fridge?
 - How _____ apples do you want?
- Choose an answer for each question in exercise 1.
 - A kilo, please.
 - There are two bottles.
 - There are only two left in the box.
 - Just five euros.
 - Twenty. Nine men and eleven women.
 - It's full.
- Practise the questions and answers with a partner.

Check it

- Correct the sentences.
 - How ~~much~~ potatoes do you want? **X**
How **many** potatoes do you want?
 - I don't like an ice-cream.
 - Can I have a bread, please?
 - I'm hungry. I like a sandwich.
 - There isn't many milk left.
 - I'd like some fruits, please.
 - How many money do you have?
 - We have lot of homework today.

Roleplay

- Work with a partner. Make a shopping list each. Buy the things you need in the market. Take turns to be the seller.

Can I help you?

Yes, please. I'd like a/some ...

Here you are. Anything else?

Yes. Can I have a/some ... ?

How much is that?

That's ... , please.

READING AND SPEAKING

Food around the world

- 1 Which food and drink comes from your country? Which foreign food and drink is popular in your country?
- 2 Can you identify any places or nationalities in the photos? What food can you see?
- 3 Read the text. Write the correct question heading for each paragraph.

Where does our food come from?

What do we eat?

How do we eat?

Find lines in the text that match the photos.

- 4 Answer the questions.
 - 1 When did human history start? Was it about 10,000 years ago or was it about 1 million years ago?
 - 2 Do they eat much rice in the north of China?
 - 3 Why do the Scandinavians and the Portuguese eat a lot of fish?
 - 4 Where don't people eat much fish?
 - 5 Which countries have many kinds of sausages?
 - 6 How many courses are there in China?
 - 7 How do people eat in the Middle East?
 - 8 Why can we now eat most things at any time of the year?

What do you think?

- 5 Work in small groups and discuss these questions about your country.
 - 1 What is a typical breakfast?
 - 2 What does your family have for breakfast?
 - 3 Is lunch or dinner the main meal of the day?
 - 4 What is a typical main meal?

Writing

- 6 Write a paragraph about meals in your country. Use your ideas from exercise 5.



Food

around the world

For **99%** of human history, people took their food from the world around them. They ate all that they could find, and then moved on. Then about 10,000 years ago, or for **1%** of human history, people learned to farm the land and control their environment.

The kind of food we eat depends on which part of the world we live in, or which part of our country we live in. For example, in the south of China they eat rice, but in the north they eat noodles. In Scandinavia, they eat a lot of herrings, and the Portuguese love sardines. But in central Europe, away from the sea, people don't eat so much fish, they eat more meat and sausages. In Austria, Germany, and Poland there are hundreds of different kinds of sausages.

In North America, Australia, and Europe there are two or more courses to every meal and people eat with knives and forks. In China there is only one course, all the food is together on the table, and they eat with chopsticks. In parts of India and the Middle East people use their fingers and bread to pick up the food.

Nowadays it is possible to transport food easily from one part of the world to the other. We can eat what we like, when we like, at any time of the year. Bananas come from the Caribbean or Africa; rice comes from India or the USA; strawberries come from Chile or Spain. Food is very big business. But people in poor countries are still hungry, and people in rich countries eat too much.

Food

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

My favourite national food

- 1 Look at the photos of four national dishes. Which do you like? Match them with the countries.

Italy Argentina England Austria

- 2 Find these things in the photos.

toast tomatoes chilli onions egg bacon chocolate beef sausage



Bruschetta



Bife de chorizo



Sachertorte



Full English breakfast

- 3 **T 9.7** Listen to the people. What nationality are they? Match them with their favourite food. What do they say about them?



Anke



Graham



Sergio



Madalena

- 4 Answer these questions about the people.
- Who ... ?
 - travels a lot
 - goes to cafés to eat their favourite food
 - likes sweet things
 - eats their favourite food at home
 - Where is Café Sacher?
 - Who invented *Sachertorte*?
 - When does Graham eat a full English breakfast?
 - How do you make *bruschetta*?
 - Where is Sergio's favourite place to go?
 - How often does Madalena eat beef?
 - Who cooks it for her?

What do you think?

- What are your favourite national foods? When and where do you eat them?
- Describe them to your partner.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Polite requests



1 What can you see in the photograph?

2 Match the questions and responses.

- 1 Would you like some more rice?
- 2 Could you pass the salt, please?
- 3 Could I have a glass of water, please?
- 4 Does anybody want more wine?
- 5 How would you like your coffee?
- 6 This is delicious! Can you give me the recipe?
- 7 Do you want help with the washing-up?

Black, no sugar, please.
 Yes, of course. I'm glad you like it.
 Do you want sparkling or still?
 Yes, please. It's delicious.
 Yes, of course. Here you are.
 Yes, please. I'd love some.
 No, of course not. We have a dishwasher.

! We use *Can/Could I ... ?* to ask for things.
Can I have a glass of water?
Could I have a glass of water?
 We use *Can/Could you ... ?* to ask other people to do things for us.
Can you give me the recipe?
Could you pass the salt?

T 9.8 Listen and check.

Music of English

T 9.9 Listen. Notice how the voice goes up at the end of a polite request. Practise the polite intonation.

Could you pass the salt, please?

Could I have a glass of water, please?

Can you give me the recipe?

Can I see the menu, please?

3 Complete these requests with *Can/Could I ... ?* or *Can/Could you ... ?*

- 1 _____ have a cheese sandwich, please?
- 2 _____ tell me the time, please?
- 3 _____ take me to the station, please?
- 4 _____ see the menu, please?
- 5 _____ lend me some money, please?
- 6 _____ help me with my homework, please?
- 7 _____ borrow your dictionary, please?

4 Practise the requests with a partner. Give an answer for each request.

Can I have a cheese sandwich, please?

Yes, of course. That's £1.75.

T 9.10 Listen and compare your answers.

10 Bigger and better!

Comparatives and superlatives • have got • City and country • Directions 2

STARTER

- 1 Do you prefer city life or country life? Why? Tell the class.

I prefer city life because it's exciting.

- 2 As a class, decide which is the most popular place to live.

I don't. I prefer country life. It's quiet and relaxing.

CITY LIFE

Comparative adjectives

- 1 Match an adjective with its opposite. Which adjectives describe city life? Which describe country life?

- 2 **T 10.1** Listen to Joel and Andy comparing city and country life. Do you agree?

- 3 **T 10.2** Listen and repeat. Be careful with the sound /ə/.

/ə/ The country is */ə/* slower and */ə/* safer than the city.

- 4 What do you think? Make sentences comparing city and country life.

The city is	cheaper	than the country.
The country is	safer	than the city.
	noisier	
	dirtier	
	more expensive	
	more exciting	

- 5 Tell the class.

I think it's safer in the country, but the city's more exciting.

Adjective	Opposite
fast	cheap
modern	slow
expensive	friendly
dangerous	clean
dirty	quiet
unfriendly	old
noisy	safe
exciting	relaxing
busy	boring

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Complete these comparatives. What are the rules?
I'm _____ (old) than you.
Your class is _____ (noisy) than my class.
Your car was _____ (expensive) than my car.
- 2 What are the comparatives of the adjectives in the chart?
- 3 The comparatives of *good* and *bad* are irregular. What are they?
good _____ bad _____

▶▶ Grammar Reference 10.1 p144

PRACTICE

Much more than . . .

1 Write the correct form of the adjectives.

- 1 A Life in the country is slower than city life. (slow)
B Yes, the city's much faster. (fast)
- 2 A New York is _____ Los Angeles. (safe)
B No, it isn't. New York is much _____. (dangerous)
- 3 A Seoul is _____ Beijing. (big)
B No, it isn't! It's much _____. (small)
- 4 A Madrid is _____ Rome. (expensive)
B No, it isn't. Madrid is much _____. (cheap)
- 5 A The buildings in Rome are _____ the buildings in Prague. (modern)
B No, they aren't. They're much _____. (old)
- 6 A Cafés in London are _____ cafés in Paris. (good)
B No! Cafés in London are much _____. (bad)

T 10.3 Listen and check. Practise with a partner.

2 Work with a partner. Compare two towns or cities that you both know. Which one do you like better? Why?

COUNTRY LIFE

have got

1 **T 10.4** Close your books. Listen to Andy and Joel's conversation. Who moved to the village of Appleton? Who stayed in London?

2 Complete the conversation with the correct adjectives.

- J So, Andy, tell me, why did you leave London? You had a _____ job.
- A Yes, but I've got a _____ job here.
- J And you had a _____ flat in London.
- A Well, I've got a _____ place here. It's a cottage!
- J Really? How many bedrooms has it got?
- A Three. And it's got a garden. It's _____ than my flat in London and it's _____.
- J But you haven't got any friends!
- A I've got a lot of new friends here. People are much _____ than in London.
- J But the country's so _____.
- A No, it isn't. I've got a surfboard now and I go surfing at weekends. Appleton has got a cinema, restaurants, pubs, and a nightclub. And the air is _____ and the streets are _____.
- J OK. OK. Everything is _____! Can I come next weekend?
- A Of course you can!

3 Practise the conversation with a partner.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 *Have* and *have got* both express possession. We often use *have got* in spoken British English.

I **have** a dog. I've **got** a dog. (I've = I have)
He **has** a car. He's **got** a car. (He's = He has)

Do you **have** a dog? Have you **got** a dog?
Does she **have** a car? Has she **got** a car?
They **don't have** a flat. They **haven't got** a flat.
It **doesn't have** a garden. It **hasn't got** a garden.

2 The past of both *have* and *have got* is *had*.

3 Find examples of *have got* and *had* in the conversation.

►► Grammar Reference 10.2 p144

PRACTICE

have/have got

- Write the sentences again, using the correct form of *have got*.
 - London has a lot of parks.
London's got a lot of parks.
 - I don't have much money.
I haven't got much money.
 - I have a lot of homework tonight.
 - Do you have any homework?
 - Our school has a good library, but it doesn't have many computers.
 - My parents have a new DVD player.
 - Does your sister have a boyfriend?
 - I don't have a problem with this exercise.

I've got more than you!

- Work with a partner. You are both famous film stars. Ask and answer questions to find out who is richer!

Student A
Go to p149.

Student B
Go to p151.

I've got five boats.
How many have you got?

Twelve. I've got this one, four in the Mediterranean, two in the South Pacific, two in the Caribbean, and three in Asia.

Well, I've got thirty cars!

That's nothing! I've got ...



PARADISE ISLANDS

Superlative adjectives

1

Coral Club Resort

Barbados, Caribbean Sea

- Built in 1952
- 85 rooms
- \$420 to \$710 a night
- one bar and restaurant, swimming pool
- 40-minute taxi ride from airport

2

Palm Hotel Resort

Maldives, Indian Ocean

- Built in 1998
- 98 rooms
- \$200 to \$600 a night
- two bars and two restaurants
- 50-minute boat ride from airport

- Here are some of the world's most relaxing holiday resorts. Which one do you like best?
- Correct the false sentences. How many correct sentences (✓) are there? What is the same about them?
 - The Coral Club is cheaper than the Palm Hotel.
 - Bati Island is the most expensive resort.
 - The Coral Club is newer than the Palm Hotel.
 - The Palm Hotel is the newest resort.
 - The Coral Club is bigger than the Palm Hotel.
 - The Palm Hotel is the biggest resort.
 - Bati Island is the smallest resort.
 - The Coral Club has got two restaurants.
 - Bati Island is nearer to the airport than the Palm Hotel.
 - The Coral Club is the nearest to the airport.
 - Bati Island is the furthest from the airport.
 - The Palm Hotel has got a swimming pool.
- Which is the best hotel in or near your town? What has it got?

3

Bati Island Resort

Fiji, Pacific Ocean

- Built in 1992
- 7 rooms
- \$660 to \$770 a night
- one bar and restaurant
- one hour seaplane flight from airport



PRACTICE

The biggest and best!

1 Complete the conversations using the superlative form of the adjective.

- That house is very big.
Yes, it's the biggest house in the village.
- The Ritz is a very expensive hotel.
Yes, _____ in London.
- Appleton is a very pretty village.
Yes, _____ in England.
- New York is a very cosmopolitan city.
Yes, _____ in the world.
- Brad Pitt is a very popular film star.
Yes, _____ in America.
- Miss Smith is a very funny teacher.
Yes, _____ in our school.
- Anna is a very intelligent student.
Yes, _____ in the class.
- This is a very easy exercise.
Yes, _____ in the book.

T 10.5 Listen and check.

2 **T 10.6** Close your books. Listen to the first lines in exercise 1 and give the answers.

Talking about your class

3 How well do you know the other students in your class? Describe them using these adjectives and others.

tall small old young intelligent funny

I think Ivan is the tallest in the class. He's taller than Karl.

Sofia's the youngest.

I'm the most intelligent!

4 Write the name of your favourite film star. Read it to the class. Compare the people. Which film star is the most popular in your class?

Check it

5 Correct the sentences.

- Yesterday was more hot than today.
- She's taller that her brother.
- I'm the most young in the class.
- Last week was busyer than this week.
- He doesn't got any sisters.
- Do you got any bread?
- My homework is the worse in the class.
- This exercise is most difficult in the book.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete these superlative sentences. What's the rule?

The Palm Hotel is the _____ (cheap).

Bati Island is the _____ (expensive).

2 Dictionaries often show irregular comparative and superlative forms of adjectives. Look at this:

good /gʊd/ adj. (**better**, **best**)

Complete these irregular forms:

bad /bæd/ adj. (_____, _____)

far /fɑ:/ adj. (_____, _____)

►► Grammar Reference 10.1 p144

READING AND SPEAKING

Viva la danza!

- 1 **T 10.7** Do you know any Latin dances? Listen to three types of Latin dance music – flamenco, tango, and salsa. Which music goes with which city?

Buenos Aires **Havana** **Seville**

- 2 Where are these cities? What do you know about them? Each sentence is about one of them. Write **BA**, **H**, or **S**.

- 1 ☒ **BA** It is called 'the Paris of the South'.
- 2 ☐ It became independent from Spain in 1816.
- 3 ☐ It is the capital city of Andalucía.
- 4 ☐ In 1960 Fidel Castro led a socialist revolution.
- 5 ☐ The Arabs ruled the city from 711 to 1248.
- 6 ☐ It is one of Europe's largest historical centres.
- 7 ☐ African slaves came to work in the sugar and tobacco fields.
- 8 ☐ It was Spain's most important port in Latin America.
- 9 ☐ More than 4 million European immigrants came to work there.

- 3 Work in three groups.

Group 1 Read about **Buenos Aires**.

Group 2 Read about **Havana**.

Group 3 Read about **Seville**.

Which sentences in exercise 2 are about your city?

- 4 Answer the questions about your city.

- 1 How many people live there?
- 2 Does it have a river? If yes, what is its name?
- 3 Why is it a tourist centre?
- 4 What are some important dates in its history?
- 5 Which famous people lived there?
- 6 What kind of music and dance is it famous for?
- 7 What or who were the influences on its music?
- 8 Which of these things can you do in the city you read about?
 - buy things in its beautiful shops
 - visit Ernest Hemingway's house
 - see a famous fiesta
 - learn to dance in a club
 - hear music by Piazzolla in his home country
 - visit the Alcazar Palace

- 5 Find partners from the other two groups. Compare the cities, using your answers.

Viva la danza!



Buenos Aires

Buenos Aires is the capital city of Argentina. It stands on the banks of the River Plate, the world's widest river. It has a population of 3 million, or 10 million, including Gran Buenos Aires. It is called 'the Paris of the South' because of its lovely European buildings. It is also a big commercial centre and visitors love its beautiful shops.

Its history

For a long time, Buenos Aires was a small port in the furthest corner of the Spanish Empire. It became independent from Spain in 1816. Then the British arrived to build railways across Argentina. More than 4 million European immigrants came between 1840 and 1940 to work on the railways. They were mostly young men. The city quickly grew and became very rich.

Its music and dance

Tango began in San Telmo, the poor immigrant area of the city, in the 19th century. Its biggest influence was flamenco guitar. It was a workers' dance. There weren't many women in Buenos Aires then, so men practised together in the streets, before they tried dancing with a woman. There are still many tango bars, which tourists always visit. Astor Piazzolla, the famous composer of modern tango, lived there before he died in 1992.



Viva la danza! Viva la danza!



Havana

Havana is the capital of Cuba, the largest island in the Caribbean. It has a population of 2.2 million. It is one of the oldest cities in Latin America. It is a very cultural city and has lots of beautiful old Spanish buildings. In the 1990s Cuba became the second most popular tourist attraction in the Caribbean.

Its history

In the 16th century, Havana was Spain's most important port and city in Latin America. Later, African slaves came here to work in the country's sugar and tobacco fields. At the beginning of the 19th century, it was one of the richest cities in the West. Ernest Hemingway, the famous US writer, lived there from 1940. In 1960 Fidel Castro led a socialist revolution and became president.

Its music and dance

Havana was the birthplace of many Afro-Cuban dance styles, including salsa. The music was an exciting mixture of Spanish guitar and African drums.

Salsa's original name was 'Casino' because of the clubs (casinos) that people danced in. Later, Latin Americans in New York gave it the name 'salsa', meaning 'spice'. Today tourists go to Havana to learn to salsa and to dance in the famous clubs.



Seville

Seville is the capital of Andalucía, and the largest city of Southern Spain, with a population of 750,000. It stands on the banks of the Guadalquivir river. It is one of Europe's largest historical centres with many beautiful old buildings. Tourists also come for its famous fiesta in April.

Its history

The Arabs ruled the city from 711 to 1248. They built the Alcazar Palace and the Giralda tower. In 1503 Seville became the most important port in Spain for ships sailing to South America, and it was a very rich cultural centre. The famous painter Diego Velázquez was born here in 1599. Last century, there were two international exhibitions in Seville in 1929 and 1992.

Its music and dance

Flamenco began in the 17th century as a song and dance with very fast hand clapping. Arabs and gypsies were the biggest influence on flamenco. The guitar music came later. In the 18th century, one of the first flamenco schools began in the famous Triana district in Seville. Visitors can still find real flamenco here in the music cafés, but the music and dancing doesn't start before midnight!

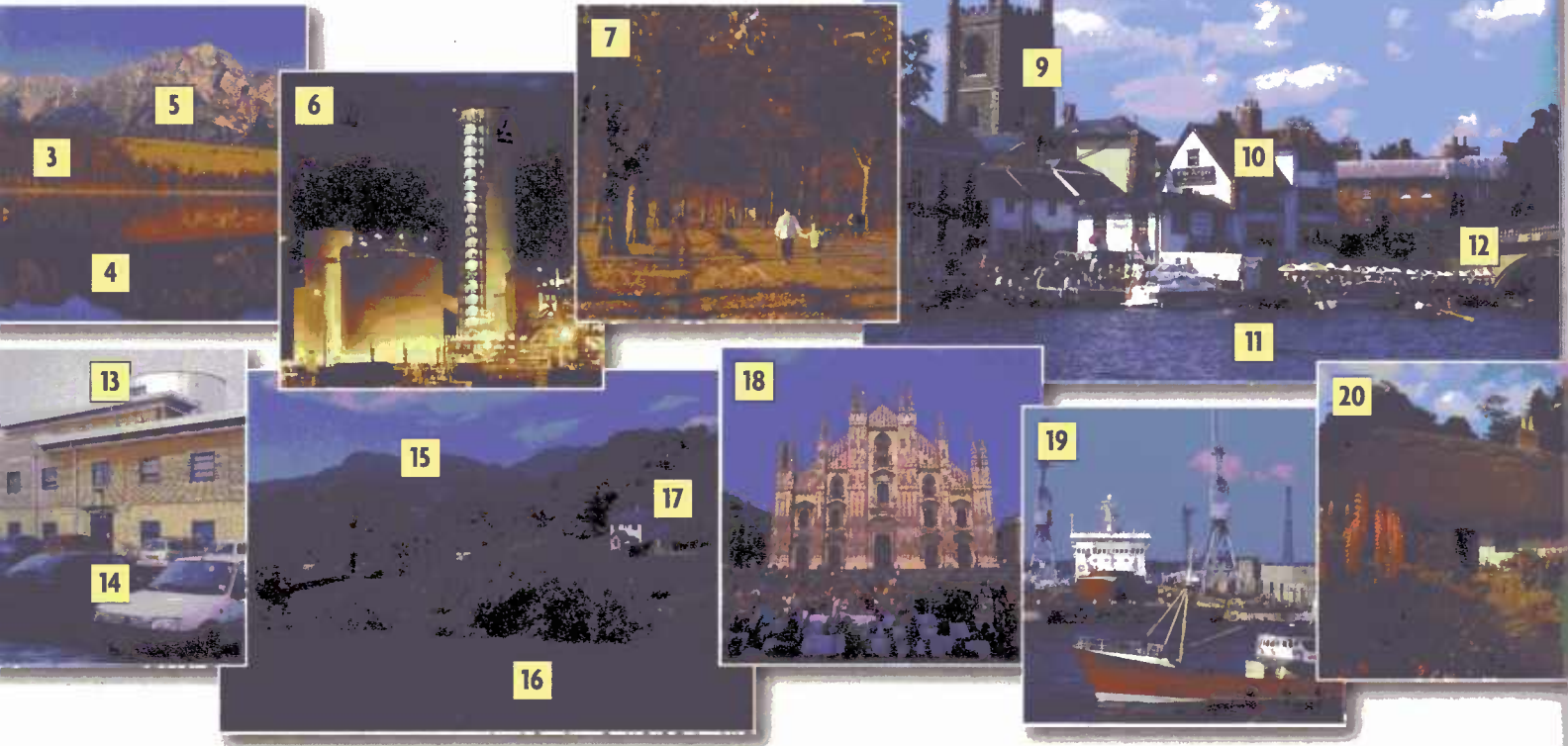


VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

City and country words

1 Match these words with the pictures. Which things do you usually find only in the country?

wood park museum church cathedral farm bridge
car park port factory pub field theatre lake
village hill mountain cottage building river



2 Complete the sentences with a word from exercise 1.

- Everest is the highest _____ in the world.
- The Golden Gate _____ in San Francisco is the longest _____ in the USA.
- The Caspian Sea isn't a sea, it's the largest _____ in the world.
- Rotterdam is the busiest _____ in Europe. Ships from all over the world stop there.
- The Empire State _____ in New York was the tallest _____ in the world for over 40 years.
- A church is much smaller than a _____.

T 10.8 Listen and check.

3 Write these words from exercise 1.

/wʊd/ _____ /fɑ:m/ _____ /'fæktri/ _____
/fi:ld/ _____ /'θɪətə/ _____ /'vɪlɪdʒ/ _____
/'kɒtɪdʒ/ _____ /tʃɜ:tʃ/ _____ /'bɪldɪŋ/ _____

T 10.9 Listen and repeat.

4 Divide into two groups. Play the game. Which group can continue the longest?

Group 1 A walk in the country
Continue one after the other.

I went for a walk in the country and I saw a farm.

I went for a walk in the country and I saw a farm, and some cows.

I went for ...

Group 2 A walk in the city
Continue one after the other.

I went for a walk in the city and I saw some shops.

I went for a walk in the city and I saw some shops, and a cathedral.

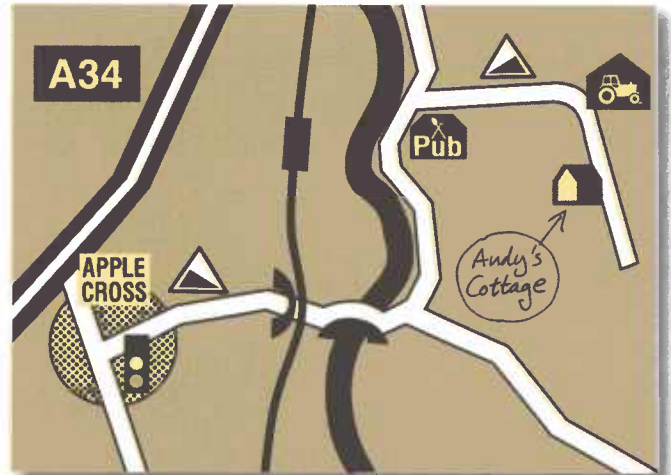
I went for ...

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Directions 2

- 1 **T 10.10** Listen to Andy's directions to his cottage. Mark the route on the map. Then complete the directions.

Leave the A34 at Apple Cross. _____ left at the traffic lights. Then go _____ the hill, and _____ the first bridge. OK? Then go _____ the second bridge, and _____ the road by the river. Go _____ the pub, and _____ right _____ the hill. Go _____ the corner past the farm, and my cottage is _____ right. It's easy!



- 2 **T 10.11** Complete the text with the prepositions. Listen to Joel and Andy's conversation. Check your answers.

along down into round over past through under up



Joel drove _____ the hill, _____ the first bridge, and _____ the second bridge.



Then he drove _____ the road by the river, _____ the pub, and _____ the hill.



Next he drove _____ the corner, off the road, _____ some apple trees, and _____ a lot of mud!

- 3 Cover the text. Look at the pictures and tell Joel's story.

- 4 Work with a partner.
Student A Think of a place near your school. Give your partner directions, but do not say what the place is.
Student B Listen to the directions. Where are you?



11

Looking good!

Present Continuous • Whose? • Clothes • Words that rhyme • In a clothes shop

STARTER



1 Look around the classroom. Can you see any of these clothes?

a hat a coat a jumper a shirt a T-shirt a dress a skirt a jacket
a suit shorts trousers jeans shoes boots trainers

2 What are you wearing?
What is your teacher wearing?
Tell the class.

I'm wearing blue jeans and a white T-shirt.

You're wearing a dress.

DESCRIBING PEOPLE

Present Continuous

1 Look at the photos. Describe the people.

Who ... ?

- is pretty
- is good-looking
- is handsome
- is tall
- isn't very tall

Poppy's pretty.

Who's got ... ?

long
short
fair
dark
grey

hair

Sofia's got dark hair
and brown eyes.

blue
brown

eyes

2 What are they doing?

Who ... ?

- is smiling
- is laughing
- is eating
- is standing up
- is drawing
- is reading
- is playing the guitar
- is sitting down
- is using a computer
- is painting
- is walking

Ella's smiling.

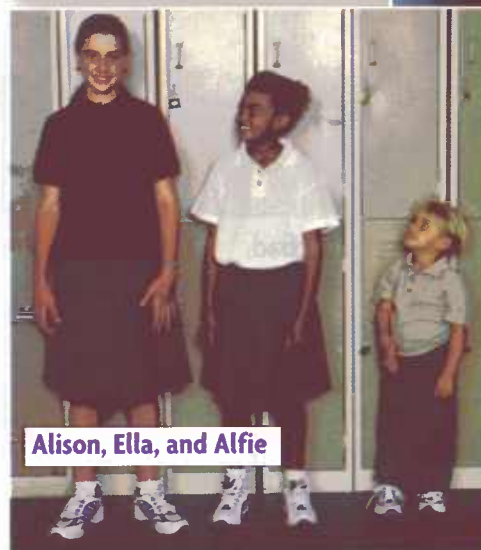
3 What are they wearing?

Andy's wearing glasses.

Simon's wearing a black jacket.



Andy



Alison, Ella, and Alfie



Poppy

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 *Am/is/are* + adjective describes people and things.

She is young/tall/pretty.

- 2 *Am/is/are* + verb + *-ing* describes activities happening *now*. Complete the table.

I		learning English. sitting in a classroom. listening to the teacher.
You		
He/She		
We		
They		

This is the Present Continuous tense.
What are the questions and the negatives?

- 3 What is the difference between these sentences?

He speaks Spanish.
He's speaking Spanish.

►► Grammar Reference 11.1 and 11.2 p145

PRACTICE

Talking about you

- 1 Write sentences that are true for you at the moment.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1 I/wearing a jacket | I'm not wearing a jacket, I'm wearing a jumper. |
| 2 I/wearing jeans | |
| 3 I/standing up | 6 teacher/writing |
| 4 I/looking out of the window | 7 we/working hard |
| 5 it/raining | 8 I/chewing gum |

Tell a partner about yourself.

- 2 Work with a partner.

Student A Choose someone in the classroom, but don't say who.

Student B Ask *Yes/No* questions to find out who it is!

Is it a girl?

Yes, it is.

Is she sitting near the window?

No, she isn't.

Has she got fair hair?

No, she hasn't.

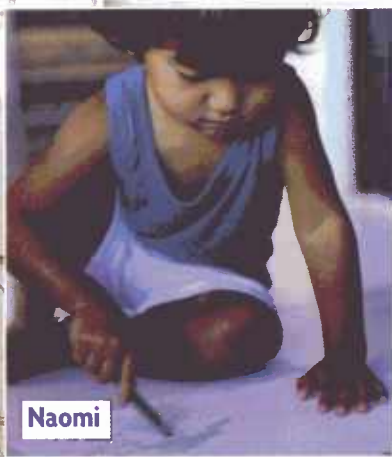
- 3 Look out of the window. What can you see? Buildings? Hills? Fields?
Can you see any people? What are they doing? Describe the scene.



Kate and Sofia



Simon



Naomi



Dan, John, Clifford, and Albert



Colin

Who's at the party?

- 4 **T 11.1** Oliver is at the party, but he doesn't know anyone. Monica is telling him about the other guests. Listen and write the people's names on the picture.



- 5 Listen again and complete the table.

	Present Continuous	Present Simple
Harry	He's sitting down and he's talking to Mandy.	He works in LA.
Mandy		
Fiona		
George		
Roz and Sam		

Getting information

- 6 Work with a partner.

Student A Look at the picture of a party on p149.

Student B Look at the picture of a party on p151.

Don't show your picture! There are *ten* differences. Talk about the pictures to find them.

In my picture three people are dancing.

In my picture four people are dancing.

There's a girl with fair hair.

Is she wearing a black dress?

THE HOUSE IS A MESS!

Whose is it?

- 1 Find these things in the room. Then find them on the people on p85.

a baseball cap boots a baby a plant trainers
a coat sunglasses a tie a bag a football a briefcase



- 2 **T 11.2** Listen to the questions. Complete the answers with *his*, *hers*, or *theirs*.

1 Whose is the baseball cap? It's _____.

2 Whose are the boots? They're _____.

3 Whose is the baby? It's _____.

Practise the questions and answers with a partner. Then ask about the other things in exercise 1.

- 3 Give something of yours to the teacher. Ask and answer questions about the objects. Use these possessive pronouns.

mine yours his hers ours theirs

Whose jacket is this?

It's Anya's.

It's hers.

Is it yours, Anya?

Yes, it's mine.



PRACTICE

who's or whose?

- Choose the correct word. Compare your answers with a partner.
 - I like *your/yours* house.
 - Ours/Our* house is smaller than *their / theirs*.
 - And *their/theirs* garden is bigger than *our/ours*, too.
 - My/Mine* children are older than *her/hers*.
 - Whose/Who's* talking to *your/yours* sister?
 - This book isn't *my/mine*. Is it *your/yours*?
 - '*Whose/Who's* dictionary is this?' 'It's *his/him*.'
 - '*Whose/Who's* going to the party tonight?' 'I'm not.'
 - '*Whose/Who's* dog is running round *our/ours* garden?'
- T 11.3** Listen to the sentences. If the word is **Whose?** shout 1! If the word is **Who's?** shout 2!

Who's on the phone?

2

Whose is it?

1

What a mess!

- T 11.4** Complete the conversation. Listen and check.

A _____ is this tennis racket?

B It's _____.

A What's it doing here?

B I'm _____ tennis this afternoon.



The Present Continuous can also describe activities happening in the near future.

I'm playing tennis this afternoon.

We're having pizza for dinner tonight.

- Make more conversations with a partner.
 - these football boots? / John's / playing football later
 - these ballet shoes? / Mary's / going dancing tonight
 - this suitcase? / mine / going on holiday tomorrow
 - this coat? / Jane's / going for a walk soon
 - this plane ticket? / Jo's / flying to Rome this afternoon
 - all these glasses? / ours / having a party tonight

T 11.5 Listen and check.

Check it

- Correct the sentences.
 - Alice is tall and she's got long, black hairs.
 - Who's boots are these?
 - I'm wearing a jeans.
 - Look at Roger. He stands next to Jeremy.
 - He's work in a bank. He's the manager.
 - What is drinking Suzie?
 - Whose that man in the garden?
 - Where you going tonight?
 - What you do after school today?

GRAMMAR SPOT

- Complete the table.

Subject	Object	Adjective	Pronoun
I	me	my	mine
You	you	_____	_____
He	_____	his	_____
She	_____	_____	hers
We	us	our	_____
They	them	_____	_____

- Whose* ... ? asks about possession.

Whose hat is this?

Whose is this hat?

Whose is it?

It's my hat. = It's mine.

- Careful!

Who's your teacher?

Who's = Who is

►► Grammar Reference 11.3 p145

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Looking for that something

- 1 What makes you happy? Think of five things that make you happy. Write them down. Compare them with a partner.
- 2 What makes you happiest? Choose one thing only. Compare with the class.
- 3 **T 11.6** Close your books and listen to the song.
- 4 Read the song by an Irish band called *Westlife*.



Can you match these words from the song and their meanings?

joy
to cherish
to deny
solitary
the sunrise

to love
happiness
when the sun comes up
to say no to something
alone, lonely

- 5 **T 11.6** Look at the words on the right. Choose the correct word to complete the lines. Listen again and check.

What do you think?

- In the song, what does 'flying without wings' mean?
- Did you find any of the things on your list in the song?



Everybody's _____ for that something
One thing that makes it all complete
You find it in the strangest _____
Places you never knew it could be

Some find it in the faces of their _____
Some find it in their lover's _____
Who can deny the joy it brings
When you find that _____ thing
You're flying without wings

Some find it sharing every _____
Some in their solitary lives
You find it in the words of others
A simple line can make you _____ or cry

You find it in the deepest _____
The kind you cherish all your life
And when you know how _____ that means
You've found that special thing
You're flying without wings

So impossible as it may seem
You've got to _____ for every dream
'Cause who's to _____ which one you let go
Would have made you complete

Well, for me it's waking up beside _____
To watch the sunrise on your face
To know that I can say I _____ you
At any given time or place

It's little things that only I know
Those are the things that make you _____
And it's like flying without wings
'Cause you're my special _____
I'm flying without wings

You're the place my life _____
And you'll be where it ends
I'm flying without wings
And that's the joy you _____
I'm flying without wings

looking / finding

places / houses

parents / children
hair / eyes

special / interesting

breakfast / morning

dance / laugh

friendship / water

many / much

fight / sleep
say / know

her / you

like / love

mine / theirs

person / thing

begins / stops

take / bring

Flying without wings



Speaking

- 6 Read the questionnaire and answer the questions. Stand up. Ask students in the class the questions. Find people with the same answers as yours.

My favourite things

- 1 What's your favourite **food**?

- 2 What's your favourite **drink**?

- 3 What's your favourite **colour**?

- 4 What are your favourite **clothes**?

- 5 What are your favourite **shoes**?

- 6 Who's your favourite **singer or band**?

- 7 What are your favourite **things to do at weekends**?

- 8 Who's your favourite **person**?

- 9 Where's your favourite **place**?

- 10 Who's your favourite **film star or actor**?

- 7 Tell the class which people like the same things as you.

Johann and I both like blue.

Stella and I both like trainers.

►► WRITING Describing people p122

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Words that rhyme

1 Read these lines. Which words rhyme?

A Who knows whose roses those are?

B Those flowers are ours, thank you.

T 11.7 Listen and check. Practise saying the lines.

2 Match the words that rhyme.

red	kissed
green	dark
hat	mean
short	shoes
park	said
list	that
whose	bought

eyes	beer
those	pay
ours	wear
hair	knows
near	size
grey	flowers

3 Write two of the words on each line according to the sound.

Vowels

- /e/ red said
- /æ/ _____
- /ɪ/ _____
- /i:/ _____
- /ɑ:/ _____
- /u:/ _____
- /ɔ:/ _____

Diphthongs

- /aɪ/ eyes _____
- /ɪə/ _____
- /eɪ/ _____
- /eə/ _____
- /əʊ/ _____
- /aʊ/ _____

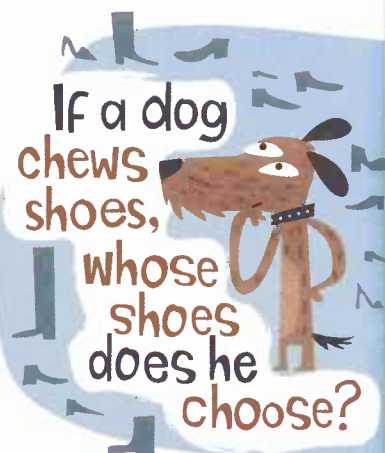
T 11.8 Listen and check.

4 Can you add any more words to the lists? Practise saying them.

red said bed head ...
hat that cat ...

Tongue twisters

5 **T 11.9** Tongue twisters are sentences that are difficult to say. They are good pronunciation practice. Listen, then try saying these quickly to a partner.



6 Choose two tongue twisters and learn them. Say them to the class.

► Phonetic symbols p159

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

In a clothes shop

- 1 Read the lines of a conversation in a clothes shop. Who says them, the customer or the shop assistant? Write SA or C.

- a ☐ Can I help you? SA
- b ☐ Oh yes. I like that one much better. Can I try it on? C
- c ☐ £39.99. How do you want to pay?
- d ☐ Yes, please. I'm looking for a shirt to go with my new jeans.
- e ☐ Blue.
- f ☐ Yes, of course. The changing rooms are over there. ... Is the size OK?
- g ☐ OK. I'll take the green. How much is it?
- h ☐ Can I pay by credit card?
- i ☐ What colour are you looking for?
- j ☐ No, it isn't the right blue.
- k ☐ No, it's a bit too big. Have you got a smaller size?
- l ☐ That's the last blue one we've got, I'm afraid. But we've got it in green.
- m ☐ Well, what about this one? It's a bit darker blue.
- n ☐ What about this one? Do you like this?
- o ☐ Credit card's fine. Thank you very much.

- 2 Can you match any lines with the photos?

Photo 1 SA Can I help you?

C Yes, please. I'm looking for a shirt to go with my new jeans.

- 3 Work with a partner and put the all the lines in the correct order.

T 11.10 Listen and check.

Music of English

Practise the conversation with your partner.
Pay attention to stress and intonation.

- 4 Make more conversations in a clothes shop. Buy some different clothes.

► SONG Wonderful tonight
Teacher's Book p149





12 Life's an adventure!

going to future • Infinitive of purpose • The weather • Making suggestions

STARTER



- 1 How many sentences can you make?
- 2 Make similar true sentences about you. Tell the class.

I'm going to Brazil
I went to Brazil

soon.
when I was a student.
next month.
in a year's time.
two years ago.
when I retire.

FUTURE PLANS

going to

- 1 Jack and his sports teacher, Danny Carrick, both have plans for the future. Read their future plans. Which do you think are Jack's? Which are Danny's? Write J or D.

- 1 ☒ J I'm going to be a footballer.
- 2 ☐ I'm going to travel all over the world.
- 3 ☐ I'm going to train very hard.
- 4 ☐ I'm going to try new things.
- 5 ☐ I'm going to play for Manchester United.
- 6 ☐ I'm not going to marry until I'm very old.
- 7 ☐ I'm not going to stay at home and watch TV.
- 8 ☐ I'm going to learn to scuba-dive.
- 9 ☐ I'm going to write a book.
- 10 ☐ I'm going to be famous.

T 12.1 Listen and check. Were you correct?

- 2 Talk first about Jack, then about Danny. Use the ideas in exercise 1.

Jack's going to be a footballer.

He's going to ...

He isn't going to ...

Which two plans are the same for both of them?

They're both going to ...

- 3 **T 12.2** Listen and repeat the questions and answers about Jack.

Is he going to be a footballer?

Yes, he is.

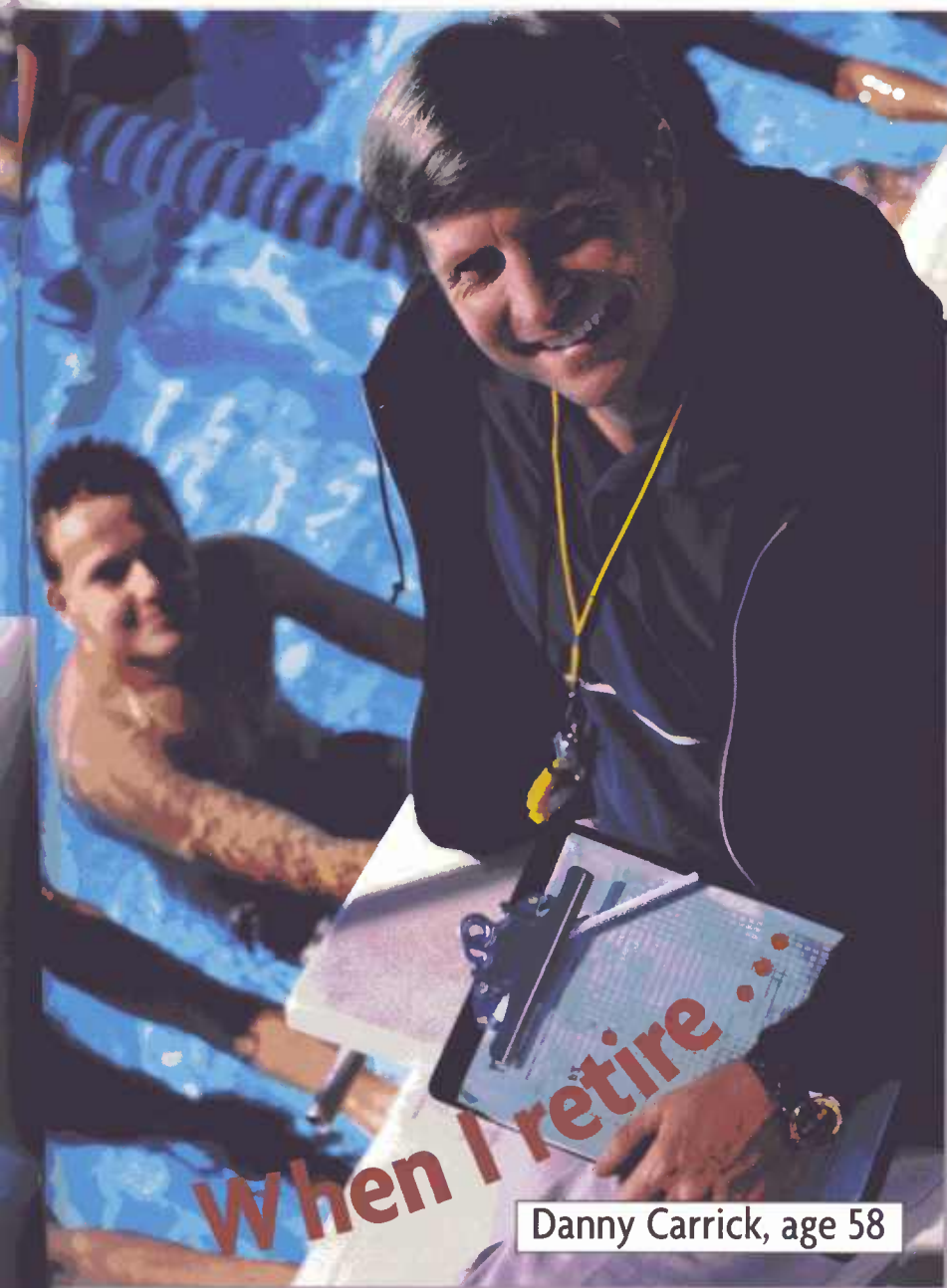
What's he going to do?

Train very hard.

When I grow up ...

Jack, age 11





Danny Carrick, age 58

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 The verb *to be* + *going to* expresses future plans. Complete the table.

I		going to leave tomorrow.
You		
He/She		
We		
They		

What are the questions and the negatives?

- 2 Is there much difference between these two sentences?
I'm leaving tomorrow. I'm **going to** leave tomorrow.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 12.1 p146

PRACTICE

Questions about Jack

- 1 With a partner, make more questions about Jack. Then match them with an answer.

Questions

- Why/he/train very hard?
- How long/play football?
- When/marry?
- How many children/have?
- Who/teach to play?

Answers

- Until he's 35.
- Two.
- His sons.
- Not until he's very old – about 25!
- Because he wants to be a footballer.

- 2 **T 12.3** Listen and check. Practise the questions and answers with your partner.

Questions about you

- 3 Are you going to do any of these things after the lesson? Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

- watch TV
- have a coffee
- catch a bus
- eat in a restaurant
- meet some friends
- cook a meal
- go shopping
- wash your hair
- do your homework

Are you going to watch TV?

Yes, I am./ No, I'm not.

- 4 Tell the class some of the things you and your partner *are* or *are not* going to do.

We're both going to have coffee.

I'm going to catch a bus, but Anna isn't. She's going to walk home.

I'm going to sneeze!

! We also use *going to* when we can see *now* that something is sure to happen soon.

5 What is going to happen? Use these verbs.

have sneeze win jump be late kiss rain fall



1 It _____



2 I _____



3 She _____



4 He _____



5 You _____



6 They _____



7 They _____ a baby.



8 He _____

6 Put a sentence from exercise 5 into each gap.

- 1 Take an umbrella. _____.
- 2 Look at the time! _____ for the meeting.
- 3 Anna's running very fast. _____ the race.
- 4 Look! Jack's on the wall! _____.
- 5 Look at that man! _____.
- 6 _____. It's due next month.
- 7 There's my sister and her boyfriend! _____.
- 8 'Oh dear. _____. Aaattishooo!' 'Bless you!'

T 12.4 Listen and check.

I WANT TO SEE THE WORLD!

Infinitive of purpose

1 Match the places and activities. Can you find them in the photos?

Nepal
Brazil
The Great Barrier Reef
China
Hawaii
Alaska
the USA
Kenya

fly over the Grand Canyon
climb Mount Everest
take photographs of the lions
walk along the Great Wall
go scuba-diving
visit the rainforest
watch whales
go surfing

2 Danny Carrick is going to visit all the countries in exercise 1. He is telling his friend, Harold, about his plans. Read their conversation and complete the last sentence.

Danny First I'm going to Nepal.

Harold Why?

Danny To climb Mount Everest!

Harold Oh my goodness! Where are you going after that?

Danny Well, then I'm going to Kenya to ...

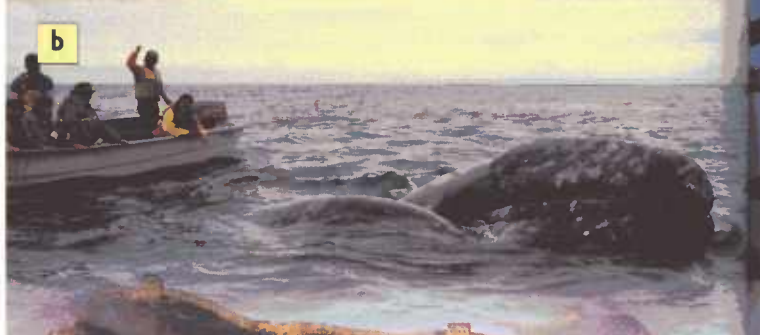
T 12.5 Listen and check. Practise the conversation with a partner.

3 Would you like to try any of these activities?

a



b



c



GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 With the verbs *to go* and *to come*, we usually use the Present Continuous for future plans.

I'm going to Nepal tomorrow.

~~X I'm going to go~~ to Nepal soon.

She's coming this evening.

~~X She's going to come~~ this evening.

- 2 Do these sentences mean the same?

I'm going to Nepal to climb Mount Everest.

I'm going to Nepal because I want to climb Mount Everest.

The infinitive can tell us *why* something happens.

I'm going to America to learn English.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 12.2 p146



PRACTICE

Roleplay

- 1 Work with a partner. **Student A** is Harold, **Student B** is Danny. Ask and answer questions about the places.

Harold Why are you going to Nepal?

Danny To climb Mount Everest!

Harold Oh my goodness!

- 2 Talk about Danny Carrick's journey. Use *first*, *then*, *next*, *after that*.

First he's going to Nepal to climb Mount Everest.

Then he's ...

Why . . . ? and When . . . ?

- 3 Write down the names of some places you went to in the past. Ask and answer questions about the places with a partner.

Why did you go to England?

To learn English.

When did you go?

Two years ago.

Why did you go to Switzerland?

To visit my cousins.

When did you go?

Last year.

Tell the class about your partner.

- 4 Use your imagination! Write down the names of some places you are going to in the *future* and do the same.

Why are you going to Paris?

To go shopping.

When are you going?

In two weeks' time.

Check it

- 5 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- 1 ☐ Is going to rain.
☐ It's going to rain.
- 2 ☐ Do you wash your hair this evening?
☐ Are you going to wash your hair this evening?
- 3 ☐ She's going to have a baby.
☐ She's going to has a baby.
- 4 ☐ I'm going to the post office to buy some stamps.
☐ I'm going to the post office for buy some stamps.
- 5 ☐ I'm going home early this evening.
☐ I'm go home early this evening.
- 6 ☐ I opened the window to get some fresh air.
☐ I opened the window for to get some fresh air.

READING AND SPEAKING

Born free

- 1 Which of these sports do you think is the most dangerous? Put them in order 1–6. 1 is the *most* dangerous. Compare your ideas with a partner and then the class.

<input type="checkbox"/> skiing	<input type="checkbox"/> football	<input type="checkbox"/> mountain-climbing
<input type="checkbox"/> windsurfing	<input type="checkbox"/> golf	<input type="checkbox"/> scuba-diving

- 2 Match a verb with a noun or phrase.

jump	a medal
join	over a wall
win	underwater
swim	a record
break	oxygen
breathe	a class

- 3 Look at the photos of Tanya Streeter and David Belle. Do you know what the sport is? Work in two groups.

Group A Read about Tanya.

Group B Read about David.

Answer the questions about your person.
Check your answers with your group.

- 1 Where did he/she grow up?
 - 2 What did he/she like doing as a child?
 - 3 How did he/she become interested in the sport?
 - 4 How does he/she feel when he/she does the sport?
 - 5 How dangerous is the sport?
 - 6 Does he/she teach the sport?
 - 7 What did he/she do last year?
 - 8 What are his/her future plans?
- 4 Work with a partner from the other group.
Compare Tanya and David, using your answers.

Speaking

- 5 **Group A** Make questions to ask David.

- 1 Why/like the countryside?
- 2 What/like doing at school?
- 3 What sport/invent?
- 4 What/do in Lisses?
- 5 What/do next?

Group B Make questions to ask Tanya.

- 1 What/like doing as a child?
- 2 When/join a diving class?
- 3 How long/can/swim underwater?
- 4 What record/break?
- 5 What/do next?

- 6 Work with a partner from the other group.
Interview each other.



Free-diving

As a child, Tanya Streeter always loved swimming in the sea – she grew up in the Cayman Islands in the Caribbean. She could always dive the deepest for seashells. But she didn't know then that she could dive deeper than anyone else in the world.

Tanya discovered her diving abilities in 1997, when she joined a class in free-diving. Free-diving is a new sport. It's very dangerous, because you dive with no oxygen. There were only men in the class and no-one wanted to dive with her because she was a girl. But her class was surprised when they saw how long she could swim underwater. Her teachers immediately wanted to train her. A few months later, Tanya started breaking records. She can swim underwater for nearly six minutes with just one breath! Last year she broke the world free-diving record. She dived 121 metres with one breath.

She says: 'At the bottom of the sea I'm calm. I love the peace and quiet down there. Coming up again is very difficult. You can't think about the pain!'

I'm not planning to break any more records for a while. I'm going to wait and see if anyone breaks my last record! In the future I'm going to teach free-diving and work for sea-life conservation.'



Free-running

David Belle grew up in the countryside, and he always loved the feeling of freedom there. He liked running, jumping, and climbing trees in the woods when he was a child. At the age of nine, he and his family went to live in Lisses, a town outside Paris. But he continued to jump and climb there. He loved doing gymnastics at school.

As a teenager in 1989, David invented the sport of *Le Parkour* or 'free-running'. The idea of *Le Parkour* is to find new and often dangerous ways to travel across the town. The runners or 'traceurs' work in groups. They run and jump over walls, roofs and buildings – everything! They try to move like cats. David and his friend Sebastian spent ten years in Lisses practising their moves and jumps and teaching other people. Last year they were on television for the first time. David says that *Le Parkour* is an art and a philosophy, not a sport. They are not trying to win medals. They just want to learn new moves and do them well. They like to feel free.

David says: 'We do it because we need to move. We are going to take our art to the world and show people how to move. And we are going to go where no human ever went before.'



VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

The weather

1 Match the words and symbols.

sunny rainy windy snowy cloudy foggy



Which symbols can the following adjectives go with?

hot warm cold cool wet dry

2 T 12.6 Listen and complete the answers.

A What's the weather like today?

B It's _____ and it's very _____.

A What was it like yesterday?

B Oh, it was _____ and _____.

A What's it going to be like tomorrow?

B I think it's going to be _____.



The question *What ... like?* asks for a description.
What's the weather like? = Tell me about the weather.

Practise the questions and answers. Ask and answer about the weather where *you* are today, yesterday, and tomorrow.

3 Work with a partner. Find out about the weather round the world yesterday.

Student A Look at the information on this page.

Student B Go to p151.

Ask and answer questions to complete the information.

WORLD WEATHER

NOON YESTERDAY

		°C
Athens	S	18
Berlin	R	7
Bombay		
Edinburgh	C	5
Geneva		
Hong Kong	S	29
Lisbon		
London	R	10
Los Angeles		
Luxor	S	40
Milan		
Moscow	Sn	-1
Oslo		

What was the weather like in Athens?

It was sunny and warm. 18 degrees.



S = sunny
C = cloudy
Fg = foggy
R = rainy
Sn = snowy

4 Which city was the hottest? Which was the coldest?
Which month do you think it is?

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Making suggestions

- 1 Make a list of things you can do in good weather and things you can do in bad weather. Compare your list with a partner.

Good weather 	Bad weather 
go to the beach	watch TV

- 2 **T 12.7** Read and listen to the beginning of two conversations. Complete B's suggestions.

1 A It's a lovely day! What shall we do?
B Let's _____!

2 A It's raining again! What shall we do?
B Let's _____ and _____.

- ! 1 We use *shall* to ask for and make suggestions.
What shall we do?
Shall we go swimming? = I suggest that we go swimming.
- 2 We use *Let's* to make a suggestion for everyone.
Let's go! = I suggest that we all go. (*Let's* = Let us)
Let's have a pizza!

- 3 Continue the two conversations in exercise 2 with these lines. Put them in the correct order a–c.

- ☐ ☐ Well, let's go swimming.
- ☐ ☐ OK. Which film do you want to see?
- ☐ ☐ Oh no! It's too hot to play tennis.
- ☐ ☐ Oh no! We watched a DVD last night.
- ☐ ☐ OK. I'll get my swimming costume.
- ☐ ☐ Well, let's go to the cinema.

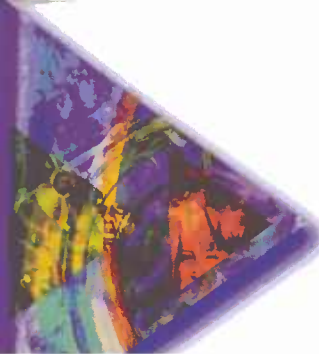
T 12.8 Listen and check.

Music of English

Practise the two conversations with your partner. Pay attention to stress and intonation.

- 4 Have more conversations suggesting what to do when the weather is good or bad. Use your lists of activities in exercise 1 to help you.

► **WRITING** Writing a postcard *p123*



13 Storytime

Question forms • Adjectives and adverbs • Describing feelings • At the chemist's

STARTER



- 1 Match a question word with an answer.
- 2 Look at the answers.
What do you think the story is?

When ... ?	Six.
Where ... ?	1991.
What ... ?	Paris.
Who ... ?	Because I love him.
Why ... ?	John.
Which ... ?	Some roses.
How ... ?	€50.
How much ... ?	The red ones.
How many ... ?	By plane.

A QUIZ

Question words

- 1 Look at the pictures. Which stories do you know?
- 2 Work in groups and answer the questions in the quiz.
- 3 **T 13.1** Listen and check your answers. Listen carefully to the intonation of the questions.
- 4 In groups, answer these questions.
 - 1 Which of the stories in the quiz do you like best?
 - 2 When you were a child, did you read a lot? Did your parents tell you stories? Which stories did you like best?
 - 3 Are there any famous stories from your country or culture?

STORYTIME

- 1 When did Shakespeare die? In the ...
a 15th century b 17th century c 19th century
- 2 What happens at the end of *Romeo and Juliet*?
- 3 How many dwarfs are there in *Snow White*?
a 4 b 7 c 11
- 4 How much money do Hansel and Gretel's parents have?
a a lot b not much c none
- 5 How long does *Sleeping Beauty* sleep?
- 6 Who does *Cinderella* marry?
a the handsome Prince
b the King
c Aladdin
- 7 Who created Mickey Mouse?



GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Underline all the question words in the quiz. When

Pronunciation

- 2 **T 13.2** Listen to the two questions. Notice the difference in intonation. Practise saying them.

'Where do you live?' 'In London.'
'Do you live in London?' 'Yes, I do.'

- 3 Make two similar questions for each of these statements. What are the short answers?

- 1 She's wearing jeans. (what)
- 2 She works in the bank. (where)
- 3 He's leaving tomorrow. (when)
- 4 I visited my aunt. (who)
- 5 We came by taxi. (how)
- 6 They're going to have a party. (why)

- 4 **T 13.3** Listen and check.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 13.1 p146

QUIZ

- 8 Where did Hans Christian Andersen come from?
a Russia b Denmark c Poland
- 9 What nationality are Don Quixote and Sancho Panza?
- 10 Whose lamp is magic?
a Aladdin's b Dracula's c Harry Potter's
- 11 Why does Pinocchio's nose grow long?
- 12 What kind of animal is Walt Disney's Dumbo?
a an elephant b a dog c a horse
- 13 Which city does Sherlock Holmes live in?
a New York b London c Paris
- 14 How old is Harry Potter in the first story *Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone*?
a 8 b 11 c 17



PRACTICE

Questions and answers

- 1 Look at the question words in A and the answers in C. Choose the correct question from B.

A	B	C
Where When Who How Whose car Why What How many Which one How much	did you buy? did you go? did you go with? did you go in? did you pay?	To the shops. This morning. A friend from work. We drove. Joe's. To buy some new clothes. A new jacket. Only one. The black leather one. £180.99.

- T 13.4** Listen and check.

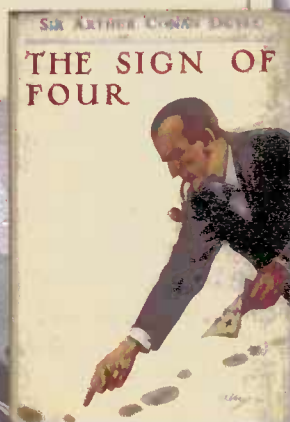
Listening and pronunciation

- 2 **T 13.5** Tick (✓) the sentence you hear.

- 1 ☐ Where do you want to go?
☐ Why do you want to go?
- 2 ☐ How is she?
☐ Who is she?
- 3 ☐ Where's he staying?
☐ Where's she staying?
- 4 ☐ Why did they come?
☐ Why didn't they come?
- 5 ☐ How old was she?
☐ How old is she?
- 6 ☐ Does he play the guitar?
☐ Did he play the guitar?
- 7 ☐ Where did you go at the weekend?
☐ Where do you go at the weekend?

Asking about you

- 3 Put the words in the correct order to make questions.
- 1 like learning do English you?
 - 2 do you night what did last?
 - 3 languages mother many does how your speak?
 - 4 last go you shopping did when?
 - 5 football which you do team support?
 - 6 come car today school by you to did?
 - 7 much do homework have you how?
 - 8 usually who sit you do next class in to?
 - 9 English want learn to you do why?
- 4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions.



DO IT CAREFULLY!

Adjectives and adverbs

- Are the words in *italics* adjectives or adverbs?
 - Smoking is a *bad* habit.
The team played *badly* and lost the match.
 - Please listen *carefully*.
Jane's a *careful* driver.
 - The homework was *easy*.
Peter's very good at tennis. He won the game *easily*.
 - I know the Prime Minister *well*.
My husband's a *good* cook.
 - It's a *hard* life.
Teachers work *hard* and don't earn much money.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- Look at these sentences.
Lunch is a **quick** meal for many people.
(*quick* = adjective. It describes a noun.)
I ate my lunch **quickly**.
(*quickly* = adverb. It describes a verb.)
- How do we make regular adverbs? What happens when the adjective ends in -y?
- There are two irregular adverbs in exercise 1. Find them.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 13.2 p146

- Match the verbs and phrases with an adverb. Usually more than one answer is possible. Which are the irregular adverbs?

get up	slowly
walk	quietly
work	early
run	fluently
speak	carefully
speak English	easily
pass the exam	hard
do your homework	fast/quickly

PRACTICE

Order of adjectives/adverbs


- Put the adjective in brackets in the correct place in the sentence. Where necessary, change the adjective to an adverb.
 - We had a holiday in Spain, but unfortunately we had weather. (terrible)
 - Maria dances. (good)
 - When I saw the accident, I phoned the police. (immediate)
 - Don't worry. Justin is a driver. (careful)
 - Jean-Pierre is a Frenchman. He loves food, wine, and rugby. (typical)
 - Please speak. I can't understand you. (slow)
 - We had a test today. (easy)
 - We all passed. (easy)
 - You speak English. (good)

Telling a story

- Complete these sentences in a suitable way.
 - It started to rain. **Fortunately** ...
 - Ali invited me to his party. **Unfortunately** ...
 - I was fast asleep when **suddenly** ...
 - I saw a man with a gun outside the bank. **Immediately** ...
- T 13.6** Listen to a man describing what happened to him in the middle of the night. Number the adverbs in the order you hear them.

Noises in the night

☐ quickly
☐ quietly
☐ slowly
☐ immediately
☐ carefully
☐ suddenly
☐ fortunately
☐ really



- Work with a partner and tell the story again. Use the order of the adverbs to help you.

Check it

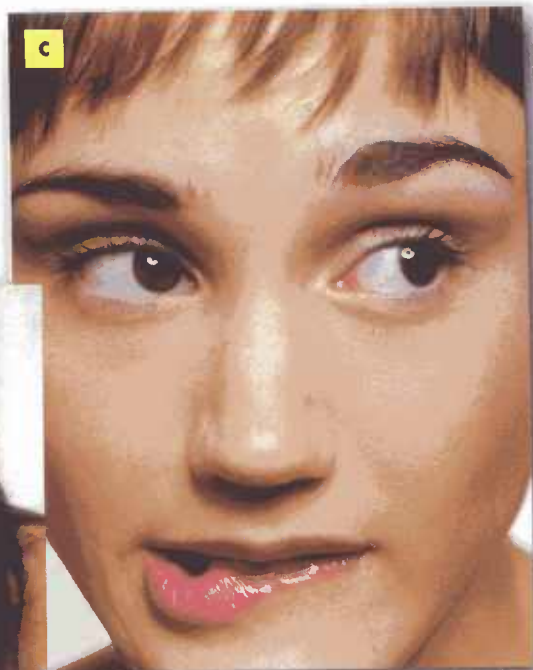
- Correct the mistake in each sentence.
 - Where does live Anna's sister?
 - The children came into the classroom noisily.
 - What means *comb*?
 - I always work hardly.
 - Do you can help me, please?
 - When is going Peter on holiday?
 - You did this exercise good.

VOCABULARY

Describing feelings

1 Match the feelings to the pictures.

bored tired worried excited annoyed interested



2 Match the feelings and reasons to make sentences.

	Feelings		Reasons
I am	bored tired worried excited annoyed interested	because	I'm going on holiday tomorrow. we have a good teacher. I worked very hard today. I can't find my keys. I have nothing to do. I want to go to the party but I can't.



Some adjectives can end in both **-ed** and **-ing**.

The book was **interesting**.

I was **interested** in the book.

The lesson was **boring**.

The students were **bored**.

3 Complete each sentence with the correct adjective.

1 **excited**
exciting

Life in New York is very ...
The football fans were very ...

2 **tired**
tiring

The marathon runners were very ...
That game of tennis was very ...

3 **annoyed**
annoying

The child's behaviour was really ...
The teacher was ... when nobody did the homework.

4 **worried**
worrying

The news is very ...
Everybody was very ... when they heard the news.

4 Answer your teacher's questions using adjectives from exercises 1 and 2.

Did you like doing exercise 2?

No, we didn't. It was **very boring**!

How did you feel?

Very bored!

READING AND LISTENING

A short story

- 1 Do you give presents at Christmas?
What are some of the best/worst presents you have given or received?
- 2 Work with a partner. Look at the pictures.
Where and when does the story take place?
Who do you think the people are?
- 3 **T 13.7** Read and listen to **part one** of the story.
- 4 Answer the questions.
 - 1 Where does Della live?
 - 2 Is she married?
 - 3 What's her job?
 - 4 What time of year is it?
 - 5 What does she want to do for Jim?
 - 6 Why do you think she is going into town?
What is she going to do?
 - 7 Which of these adjectives best describe Della? Why?

happy sad tired tiring worried
worrying bored careful annoying
excited angry

- 5 **T 13.8** Read and listen to **part two**.
- 6 Answer the questions.
 - 1 Where did Della go? What did she do?
Did you guess correctly?
 - 2 How much money does she have for Jim's present?
 - 3 What does she buy for him? Why?
 - 4 What does she think of her hair now?
 - 5 What does Jim think of her hair? What do you think the problem is?
 - 6 What adjectives best describe Della in part two of the story? Why?

happy sad tired tiring worried
worrying bored careful annoying
excited angry surprised

- 7 How do you think the story is going to end?
Discuss your ideas with the class.

Read **part three** on p104 and check your ideas.

The Christmas Presents

Part One

One dollar and eighty-seven cents. That was all. Della carefully counted the money again. There was no mistake. Every day, when she went to the shops, she didn't spend much money. She bought the cheapest meat and the cheapest vegetables. It was very tiring – she walked for hours around the shops to find the cheapest food. She saved every cent possible. Only one dollar and eighty-seven cents. The next day was Christmas, and she couldn't do anything about it. So she sat there in her little room and cried quietly.

Della lived in this poor little room in New York with her husband, James Dillingham Young. James (Jim to his friends) was lucky because he had a job, but it wasn't a good job. Times were bad and there was no work for Della. But when Jim came home, she immediately put her arms around him. And that was good.

Della wanted to buy Jim a Christmas present – something really good to show how much she loved him. Suddenly she ran to the mirror and looked at her beautiful long hair. Then she put on her old brown hat and coat and quickly went into town.





Part Two

She stopped when she came to a door with 'Madame Eloise - Hair' on it. Inside was a small fat woman. 'Do you buy hair?' Della asked.

'I buy hair,' Madame answered. 'Take your hat off, then, and show me your hair. Madame slowly touched the hair with her hand. 'Twenty dollars,' she said.

'Quick! Cut it off! Give me the money!' Della said.

The next two hours went quickly. Della was happy, because she was at the shops with money for a present for Jim. At last she found him the perfect present. Jim had one special thing. He had a beautiful gold watch that once belonged to his father, and before that to his grandfather. Jim loved his watch, but it had no chain. When Della saw the gold watch chain, she knew immediately that it was right for Jim. It cost twenty-one dollars.

Della ran home excitedly with the eighty-seven cents. When she arrived, she looked at her very short hair in the mirror. 'Oh dear. I look like a schoolboy! What is Jim going to say when he sees me?'

At seven o'clock Jim came in. His eyes were on Della. She could not understand the look on his face. He was not angry or surprised. He just looked at her sadly. Della ran to him.

'Jim, don't look at me like that! I sold my hair because I wanted to give you a present.'

'You sold your hair?' he said quietly.

'Yes. I told you. But don't worry. It grows so fast. But don't you love me any more, Jim?'



Part Three

Suddenly Jim put his arms around Della. 'I love you, Della. It doesn't matter if your hair is long or short. But open this. Then you can see why I was unhappy at first.'

Della opened the present excitedly. Then she gave a little scream of happiness. But a second later there was a cry of unhappiness. There were the combs – for her beautiful hair. When she first saw these lovely, expensive combs in the shop window, she wanted them. And now they were hers. But she no longer had her hair! Della held them in her hand and her eyes were full of love.

Then Della remembered. She ran to get Jim's present. 'Isn't it lovely, Jim? Give me your beautiful watch, and let's see it with its new chain!'

But Jim sat down and smiled.

'Della, you see, I sold the watch to buy your combs.'

And this was the story of two young people who were very much in love.



Adapted from a short story by O. Henry

8 T 13.9 Read and listen to **part three**.

9 Answer the questions.

- 1 What did Jim think of Della's hair? What was his problem? Did you guess correctly?
- 2 Does Della like her present?
- 3 What's the problem with Della's present for Jim?
- 4 Which of these do you think is the moral of the story?

You don't need to spend a lot of money on a nice present.

Thinking carefully about a present is important.

The best present of all is love.

Language work

- 10** Put some adjectives and adverbs from the story into the correct box.

Adjectives	Adverbs

- 11** Write questions about the story using these question words. Ask and answer the questions across the class.

when how much what
why where how

When did the story take place?

A long time ago, at Christmas.

►► **WRITING** Writing a story **p124**

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

At the chemist's

- 1 Match a word in the box with a picture.
Write the words in the correct column.

a comb suncream aspirin shampoo
deodorant plasters a toothbrush
conditioner soap toothpaste

Things for your hair	Things for your teeth	Things for your skin	Things for your health



- 2 **T 13.10** Listen and complete the conversation at the chemist's.

A Hello. Can I help you?
B Yes, please. I'm not (1) _____ very well.
I'm (2) _____ for some aspirin. (3) _____
can I find them?
A Right here. What (4) _____ do you want?
Small or (5) _____ ?
B Large, please. And I (6) _____
some shampoo, as well.
A What (7) _____ of shampoo? For dry hair?
Normal hair?
B Um ... for dry hair, please.
A There's Sunsilk or Palmolive. (8) _____ one
do you want?
B Sunsilk's fine, thanks.
A (9) _____ else?
B No, that's all. (10) _____ is that?
A Four pounds twenty.
B (11) _____ you are.
A Ten pounds. Thank you. And here's five pounds
eighty (12) _____ .
B Thanks. Bye.
A Bye-bye. Thank you very much.



Music of English

T 13.10 Listen again. Practise the conversation with a partner, paying particular attention to stress and intonation.

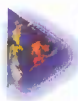
- 3 With your partner, make more conversations in the chemist's. Use the words in exercise 1.



14 Have you ever?

Present Perfect + *ever, never, yet, and just* • At the airport

STARTER



1 Match the countries and flags.

Australia	Brazil	France
Germany	Great Britain	
Italy	Japan	Canada
Spain	the USA	



2 Tick (✓) the countries that you have visited.

IN MY LIFE

Present Perfect + *ever* and *never*

1 **T 14.1** Listen to Steve and Ryan's conversation. What are they talking about? Who's Tara?

2 **T 14.2** Read and listen to Ryan's answers. Then listen and repeat.

I've been to Paris. (I've = I have)

I haven't been to Barcelona.

I've been to Italy.

I've never been to Venice.

She's been to Mexico. (She's = She has)

She hasn't been anywhere in Europe!

Work in groups. Look at the flags. Tell each other which countries you have or haven't been to. Have you been to any other countries?

3 **T 14.3** Read and listen to Tara and Steve's conversation. Practise with a partner.

T Have you ever been to Barcelona?

S No, I haven't.

T Have you ever been to Paris?

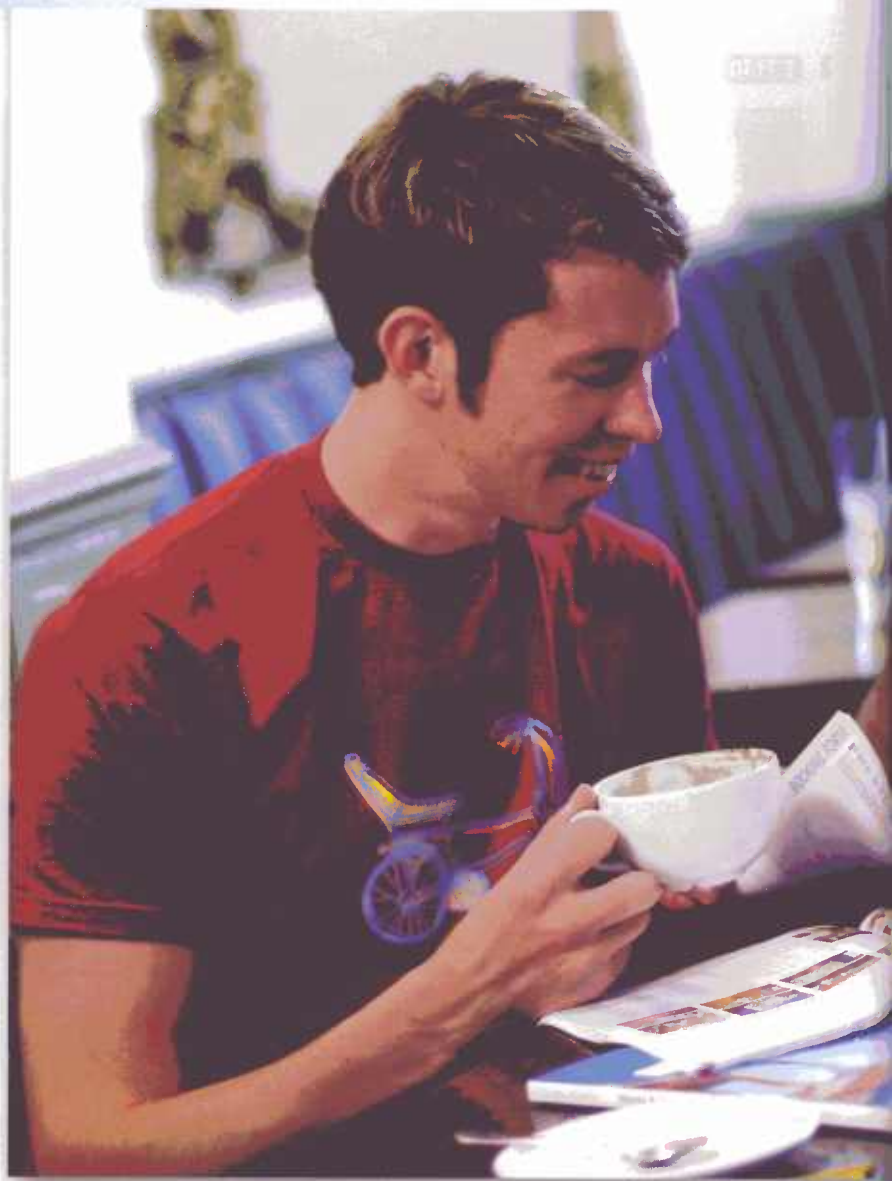
S Yes, I have.

T When did you go?

S Two years ago.

T Did you like it?

S Yes, it was beautiful.



- 4 Write down the names of four cities in your country or another country that you have been to. Have similar conversations with your partner.
- 5 Tell the class about your partner.

Maria's been to Berlin. (Maria's = Maria has)

She went there two years ago.

But she hasn't been to Paris. /
She's never been to Paris.

(She's = She has)



GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 We use the Present Perfect to talk about experiences at some time in our lives.
Have you ever (at any time in your life) **been** to Paris?
- 2 We use the Past Simple to say exactly *when* something happened.
When did you go to Paris?
I went there | two years ago.
 | in 1998.
- 3 We make the Present Perfect tense with *has/have* + the past participle. Complete the table.

	Positive	Negative	
I You We They			been to Paris.
He She It			

- 4 Write *ever* and *never* in the right place in these sentences.

Has he _____ been to Barcelona?

He's _____ been to Barcelona.

►► Grammar Reference 14.1 p147

PRACTICE

Past participles

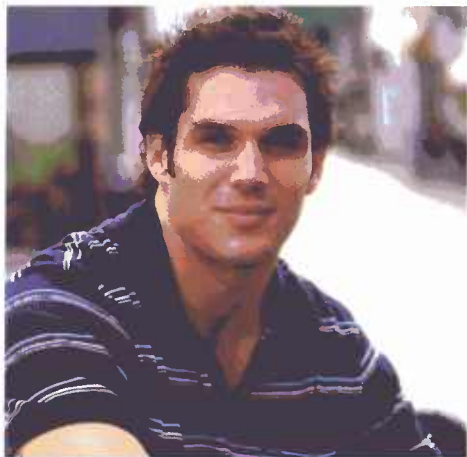
- 1 Here are the past participles of some verbs. Write the infinitive.

eaten	<u>eat</u>	made	_____	given	_____
seen	_____	taken	_____	won	_____
met	_____	ridden	_____	had	_____
drunk	_____	cooked	_____	stayed	_____
flown	_____	bought	_____	done	_____

- 2 Which are the two regular verbs?
- 3 What are the Past Simple forms of the verbs?
- 4 Look at the list of irregular verbs on p158 and check your answers.

What has Ryan done?

- 1 **T 14.4** Listen to Ryan talking about his life and tick (✓) the things he has done.



- ☐ lived in a foreign country
- ☐ worked for a big company
- ☐ stayed in an expensive hotel
- ☐ flown in a jumbo jet
- ☐ cooked a meal for a lot of people
- ☐ met a famous person
- ☐ seen a play by Shakespeare
- ☐ ridden a motorbike
- ☐ been to hospital
- ☐ won a competition

- 2 Tell your teacher about Ryan and answer your teacher's questions.

He's lived in a foreign country.

Which country did he live in?

Japan.

How long did he live there?

One year.

- 3 Ask your teacher the questions from exercise 1.

Have you ever lived in a foreign country?

Which country did you live in?

- 4 Ask a partner the questions. Tell the class about your partner.

A HONEYMOON IN VENICE

Present Perfect + *yet* and *just*

- 1 Ryan and Tara are on honeymoon in Venice. Before they went, they made a list of things they wanted to do there. Read the list below.

VENICE

Things to do ...

- have a coffee in St Mark's Square
- climb up the Bell Tower
- see the paintings in the Doge's Palace
- go on a gondola
- have a boat ride along the Grand Canal
- walk across the Rialto Bridge
- visit the glass factories on Murano Island
- go to the beach at the Lido

- 2 **T 14.5** Tara is phoning her sister Amy back home in the USA. Listen to their conversation. Tick (✓) the things in the list she and Ryan have done.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Complete the sentences.

1 Have you _____ on a gondola **yet**?

2 We _____ climbed up the Bell Tower **yet**.

3 We've **just** _____ a boat ride along the Grand Canal.

- 2 Where do we put **yet** in a sentence? Where do we put **just** in a sentence?

- 3 We can only use **yet** with **two** of the following. Which two?

- ☐ Positive sentences
- ☐ Questions
- ☐ Negative sentences

▶▶ Grammar Reference 14.2 p147

- 3 With a partner, talk about what Ryan and Tara have done and haven't done yet.

They've had a coffee in St Mark's Square.

They haven't climbed up the Bell Tower yet.

- T 14.5** Listen again and check.



PRACTICE

I've just done it

- 1 Work with a partner. Make questions with *yet* and answers with *just*.

Have you done the washing-up yet?

Yes, I've just done it.

- 1 do the washing-up
- 2 do the shopping
- 3 wash your hair
- 4 clean the car
- 5 make the dinner
- 6 meet the new student
- 7 check your email
- 8 give your homework to the teacher
- 9 finish the exercise

Check it

- 2 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- 1 ☐ I saw Ryan yesterday.
☐ I've seen Ryan yesterday.
- 2 ☐ Did you ever eat Chinese food?
☐ Have you ever eaten Chinese food?
- 3 ☐ Tara won £5,000 last month.
☐ Tara has won £5,000 last month.
- 4 ☐ I've never drunk champagne.
☐ I've never drunk champagne.
- 5 ☐ Steve has ever been to America.
☐ Steve has never been to America.
- 6 ☐ Has your sister yet had the baby?
☐ Has your sister had the baby yet?
- 7 ☐ I haven't done my homework yet.
☐ I've done my homework yet.
- 8 ☐ Did she just bought a new car?
☐ Has she just bought a new car?

READING AND SPEAKING

We've never learnt to drive!

- 1 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions. Compare answers with the class.

Have you ever ... ?	Never	Once or more When? Where? Who with?
... walked a long way		
... cycled a long way		
... ridden a motorbike		
... hitch-hiked/ thumbed a lift		
... ridden a horse		
... ridden in a horse and cart		

- 2 These words are in the texts. Translate them.

a gun a hearse a locust a tornado

- 3 Look at the pictures and read the introductions. What have Tudor Bowen-Jones and Josie Dew *never* learnt to do? How do they travel?

- 4 Work in two groups.

Group A Read about Tudor.

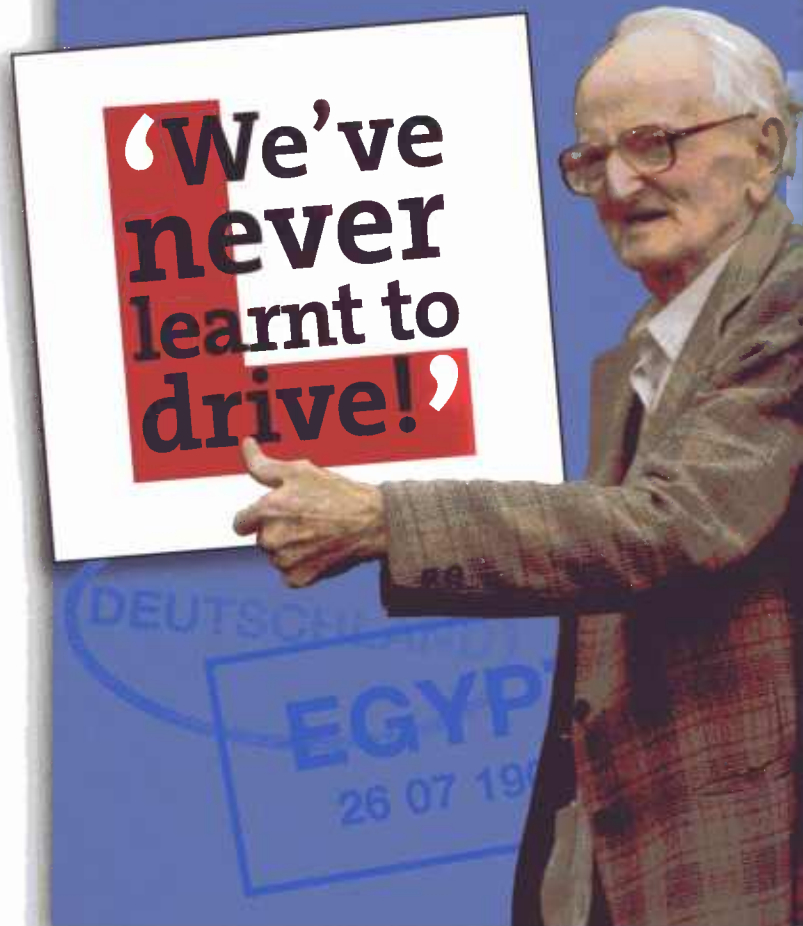
Group B Read about Josie.

- 5 Answer the questions.

- Does he/she have a job?
 - When did he/she start travelling?
 - Which year did he/she go abroad for the first time?
 - Does he/she always travel alone?
 - How many countries has he/she been to?
 - Has he/she been to Egypt?
 - Has he/she been to the USA?
 - Has he/she ever been frightened? What happened?
 - Tell your partner three more interesting things that have happened to him/her.
 - What is he/she going to do next?
- 6 Find a partner from the other group. Compare Tudor and Josie, using your answers.

What do you think?

- Would you like to travel like Tudor or Josie? Why/Why not?
- Do people cycle a lot or hitch-hike in your country? Why/Why not?
- What's your favourite way to travel? Why?



Tudor Bowen-Jones is going to spend his 90th birthday doing what he loves best – hitch-hiking.

Tudor, a retired teacher from South Wales, has spent 60 years hitch-hiking all over the world. He is now on his seventh passport, and wants to be in Vienna for his birthday. Tudor's first journey abroad was to France and Belgium in 1947. Now he likes to make two or three journeys a year. But he has never learnt to drive.

Tudor says: 'I started hitch-hiking round Britain in the 1940s when I didn't have any money. It was the only way to travel. I've been to 40 countries, and I think it's an excellent way to visit places and meet people. People are usually very surprised when I tell them what I am doing!'

His journeys have taken him across Europe, the Middle East, and America, and he has taken all kinds of interesting lifts. He has hitched-hiked with a horse and cart in Hungary, ridden a motorbike across Spain, sat in the back of a hearse in France, and enjoyed the comfort of a Rolls-Royce in Germany. The longest he has waited for a lift is twelve hours.

He has been to the Pyramids in Egypt, where the driver took out a gun. Tudor was frightened, but the driver cleaned the gun and put it back again! Tudor says that hitch-hiking is not dangerous, if you are careful.

He has made friends all over Europe. They come and visit him in his little home in Wales. 'I'm always going to hitch-hike,' Tudor says.



When **Josie Dew** was young, she fell out of a car, so she has never learnt to drive.

She was still at primary school when she decided she wanted to travel. So when she was eleven, she decided to go for long bike rides, and cycled 40 or 50 miles every day.

Josie says: 'The only good thing about secondary school was cycling there and back. I left when I was 16. I love cooking, so I started a business. I cooked three-course meals, and delivered them by bike! In 1985, as soon as I had some money, I cycled to Africa and back.'

Josie has been to 40 countries and has had all kinds of interesting experiences. She has cycled through the Himalayan mountains in Nepal, then down into India. She has cycled through millions of locusts in the Moroccan desert. She has travelled through tornados in the USA. She was in Romania on Christmas Day in 1989 when President Ceaușescu was executed by the Government. And she hasn't been to Egypt yet, because when she was in Turkey, a war started nearby. So she went to Greece instead.

She has sometimes travelled with friends, boyfriends and even her mother, but she has often cycled alone. She had only one really frightening experience – a man attacked her in Bulgaria.

In 1997 she hurt her knee very badly, so she started writing books about her journeys. She's written five books, and now she's on her bike again! At the moment she's planning to cycle around New Zealand.



LISTENING AND VOCABULARY

All around the world

- 1 **T 14.6** Close your books and listen to a song by Lisa Stansfield. What is the song about? Who is her 'baby'? What does *gonna* mean?



- 2 Match the words in **bold** with their meanings. Use a dictionary, if necessary.

We had a **quarrel**.
He **gave** a **reason**.
He was **so mad**.
I **lied** to him.
I **wasted time**.

He was really angry.
We disagreed/fought.
He explained it.
I did nothing with my time.
I didn't tell him the truth.

- 3 **T 14.6** Read the words of the song. Can you complete any of the lines? Listen to the song again and write the words you hear.

What do you think?

- Make a list of your favourite English songs.
- Compare your list with a partner.

All around the world

Chorus

I've _____ around the world and I
I can't _____ my baby
I don't know when, I don't know _____
Why he's _____ away
And I don't know _____ he can be, my baby
But I'm gonna find _____

We had a quarrel and I let myself go
I said so _____ things, things he didn't know
And I was oh so _____
And I don't think he's _____ back

He gave the reason, the reasons he should _____
And he said so many things he's never said _____
And he was oh so mad
And I don't _____ he's coming, coming back
I did too much lying, wasted too _____ time
Now I'm _____ crying.

Chorus

So open-hearted, he never did me _____
I was the one, the weakest one of _____
And now I'm oh so _____
And I don't _____ he's coming back, coming back
I did too much lying, wasted too much time
Now I'm _____ crying.

Chorus

I've _____ around the world _____ for my baby
_____ around the world and I'm gonna
I'm gonna find _____

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

At the airport

1 What do you do at an airport? Read the sentences and put them in the correct order.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> You wait in the departure lounge. | <input type="checkbox"/> You check in your luggage and get a boarding pass. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> You board the plane. | <input type="checkbox"/> You go through passport control. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> You get a trolley for your luggage. | <input type="checkbox"/> You check the departures board for your gate number. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1 You arrive at the airport. | |

2 **T 14.7** Listen to the airport announcements and complete the chart.

Departures			
Flight	Destination	Gate	Remark
BA 516	GENEVA	4	LAST CALL
SK			DELAYED
AF			NOW BOARDING
LH			NOW BOARDING
VS			WAIT IN LOUNGE

3 **T 14.8** Listen to the conversations. Who are the people? What are they doing?

- meeting people • checking in luggage • waiting in the departure lounge • saying goodbye

4 Complete each conversation with the correct question.

When can we see each other again?	Did the announcement say gate 4 or 14?
Did you have a good honeymoon?	Have you got much hand luggage?

- | | | | |
|--|--|---|---|
| <p>1 A Listen! ... BA 516 to Geneva. That's our flight.</p> <p>B _____?</p> <p>A I couldn't hear. I think it said 4.</p> <p>B Look! There it is on the departure board. It is gate 4.</p> <p>A OK. Come on! Let's go.</p> | <p>2 A Can I have your ticket, please?</p> <p>B Yes, of course.</p> <p>A Thank you. How many suitcases have you got?</p> <p>B Just one.</p> <p>A And _____?</p> <p>B Just this bag.</p> <p>A That's fine.</p> <p>B Oh ... can I have a seat next to the window?</p> <p>A Yes, that's OK. Here's your boarding pass. Have a nice flight!</p> | <p>3 A Ryan! Tara! Over here!</p> <p>B Hi! Amy! Great to see you!</p> <p>A It's great to see you too. You look terrific! _____?</p> <p>B Fantastic. Everything was fantastic.</p> <p>A Well, you haven't missed anything here. Nothing much has happened at all!</p> | <p>4 A There's my flight. It's time to go.</p> <p>B Oh no! It's been a wonderful two weeks. I can't believe it's over.</p> <p>A I know. _____?</p> <p>B Soon, I hope. I'll email every day.</p> <p>A I'll phone too. Goodbye, my darling. Give my love to your family.</p> <p>B Goodbye, Lukas.</p> |
|--|--|---|---|

T 14.8 Listen again and check.

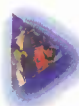
Music of English

Work with a partner. Choose a conversation from exercise 4. Learn it by heart. Pay attention to stress and intonation. Act it to the class.

► **WRITING** Writing an email – Saying thank you **p125**

► **SONG** Summertime Teacher's Book **p153**

Writing



UNIT 3 NATURAL WRITING Using pronouns

- 1 Underline the pronouns and possessive adjectives in these sentences.

- 1 She likes my brother and he likes her.
- 2 Our mother works hard. Her job is interesting.
- 3 We listen to our teachers. They help us.

- 2 Complete the table.

Subject pronouns	Object pronouns	Possessive adjectives
I	me	my
	you	
he	him	his
	her	
it	it	its
we	us	
	them	their

- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct pronoun.

- 1 My sister has a new car, but she doesn't drive it.
- 2 Luc has two sons. _____ plays football with _____ in his free time.
- 3 That's my dictionary. Can I have _____ back, please?
- 4 Irma's new teacher is Mr Banks. _____ likes _____ a lot.
- 5 Rosa and I are good students. _____ like our teacher Estella and she likes _____.
- 6 Our teacher gives _____ a lot of homework.
- 7 Kate knows Joanna, but Maria doesn't know _____ at all.
- 8 Mike buys a newspaper every day. _____ reads _____ on the train.
- 9 Look! This is a photo of _____ with my family.
- 10 Sally lives near Paul and Sue. _____ goes to work with _____ every day in their car.



Subject pronouns come *before* the verb.

He knows them. I love him. **She** wants it.

Object pronouns come *after* the verb.

He knows **them**. I love **him**. She wants **it**.

- 4 Read about István's family.

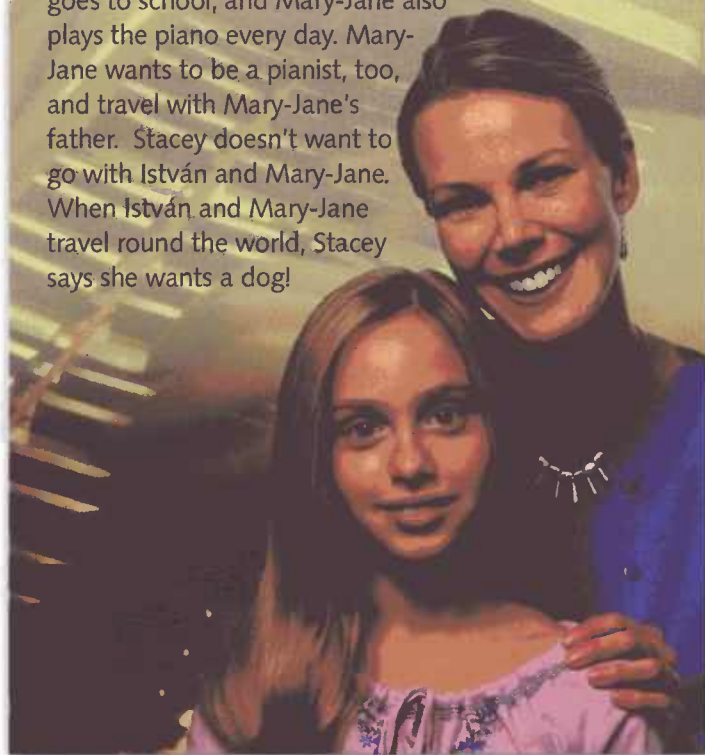
Who is István? Who is in the photo?

- 5 The text is not very natural. Which nouns can you replace with pronouns or possessive adjectives? Underline them.

István's family

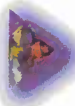
István Kis is Hungarian, but István lives in the USA because István is married to an American. István is a music professor. István likes his job because his job is interesting, and István loves playing in concerts. István travels around the world to play, but István's wife, Stacey, doesn't go with István because Stacey doesn't like travelling.

István and Stacey have a nine-year-old daughter. István and Stacey's daughter's name is Mary-Jane. Mary-Jane goes to school, and Mary-Jane also plays the piano every day. Mary-Jane wants to be a pianist, too, and travel with Mary-Jane's father. Stacey doesn't want to go with István and Mary-Jane. When István and Mary-Jane travel round the world, Stacey says she wants a dog!



- 6 Work with a partner and rewrite the text to make it more natural. Begin like this.

István Kis is Hungarian, but he lives in the USA ...



UNIT 4 INFORMAL LETTERS To a penfriend

- 1 Do you have friends from different countries? Who? Where from? Talk to a partner.
- 2 Read Becky's letter to her penfriend, Tiago.
 - Where is she? • Where is he? • What does Becky write about?

We begin all letters with *Dear* ...

Dear Tiago,

Thank you for your address in Brazil! My name's Becky and I'm nineteen years old. I'm a language student at Brighton University. I live in a house near the centre of Brighton with my mother and father, my brother James, and my Polish friend Danka.

I speak French, Spanish and a little German, but I don't speak Portuguese. Sorry! My favourite subject at university is Spanish, but I don't like German.

I like listening to music and swimming. At weekends I go out with my friends. Sometimes we go to the cinema and sometimes we go to a café or a nightclub.

What about you? What do you do in Brazil? Please write to me.

Best wishes,

Becky

We end letters to a friend with *Best wishes*. We use *Love* if we know the person very well.

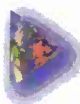
*20 Holland Street,
Brighton BN2 2WB*

5 April



- 3 Read the letter again.
 - How does it begin and end?
 - What is the date?
 - What is Becky's address?
 - What is the postcode?
 - Do you write addresses in the same way?
- 4 Write a similar letter to a penfriend about you.

*Tiago Costa
Rua Bellavista 118
Fortaleza
Brazil*



UNIT 5 DESCRIBING WHERE YOU LIVE Linking words – *and, so, but, because*

1 Join A, B and C to make sentences.

A	B	C
I like New York	and so but because	I don't like Los Angeles. it's an exciting city. I go there a lot. I like Chicago.

2 Write similar sentences about where you live.
Start *I like/don't like* (your town)...

3 Complete the sentences with *and, so, but, or because*.

- In my bedroom there's a television and a DVD player.
- We live on the top floor, _____ we don't have a garden.
- I like living here _____ it's near the shops.
- I like Mexican food, _____ my husband doesn't like it.
- We both like sailing, _____ we live near the sea.
- London is expensive, _____ I like it.

4 Read about Suzie's new flat. Complete the text with one of the linking words in exercise 1.



Where I live



I live in a new flat near the centre of Oxford. It's very small (1) _____ it's lovely! There's a sunny living room, a kitchen, a bedroom (2) _____ a bathroom.

The living room has a big window (3) _____ a nice comfortable sofa in front of it. There isn't a very big garden, (4) _____ there is a park at the end of the road, (5) _____ in summer I often go there to read or sunbathe.

I live alone with my cat, Marmalade, (6) _____ I never feel lonely (7) _____ I have a lot of visitors. My friends come to see me a lot, (8) _____ we sometimes watch a film or cook a meal.

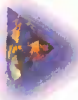
I love my flat for many reasons: the sunny living room, the good times with friends, (9) _____ best of all (10) _____ it is my first home.

5 Make notes about where you live. Use these questions.

- Where is it?
- How many rooms are there?
- What is near your home?
- Is it old or new?
- Who do you live with?
- Do you like it? What do you like best of all?

Talk to a partner about your notes.

6 Write a description of your home.



UNIT 6 FORMAL LETTERS Applying for a job

- 1 Read the advertisement for a job.
What is the job? Where is it?

IS THE OXFORD INTERNATIONAL SCHOOL
wants a receptionist

- Do you like working with people?
- Can you speak two foreign languages?
- Can you use a computer?
- Do you know Oxford well?

Please write to: Anne Watson, Director
The Oxford International School
16 College Street, Oxford OX2 7PT
or email: awatson@oxfordint.co.uk

- 2 Carol is interested in the job. Read the information about her.
Do you think she is the right person for the job?

Name	Carol Barnes
Age	28
Address	4 Hope Road, Oxford OX6 5PP
Present job	Tourist guide
Last job	Hotel receptionist
Languages	French, Spanish



- 3 Look at Carol's letter and complete it with the information from her chart.

The name and address of
the person you are writing
to goes here.

Anne Watson, Director
The Oxford International School
16 College (2) _____
Oxford OX2 7PT

4 Hope (1) _____
Oxford OX6 5PP

The date goes here.

19 August

We use *Ms*, *Miss*, or *Mrs*
for a woman.
We use *Mr* for a man.

Dear Ms Watson,

I am interested in the job of (3) _____ in your school.

Paragraph 1
Introduction

We end formal letters
with *Yours sincerely*.

I (4) _____ years old and I (5) _____ in Oxford. At the moment
I (6) _____ guide, but last year I (7) _____ a hotel receptionist.
I (8) _____ working with people very much and I (9) _____ speak
two (10) _____, French and a little Spanish. I can also (11) _____ a
computer. I (12) _____ born in Oxford, so I know it very well.

Paragraph 2
The main part
of the letter

I look forward to hearing from you.

Paragraph 3
Ending

Sign the letter and print
your name.

Yours sincerely,

Carol Barnes

Carol Barnes

- 4 Read this advertisement for another job.
What is the job? Answer the questions
about you. Now write a similar letter
to Carol's.



Happy Holidays want **TOURIST GUIDES**

- Are you over 18?
- Can you speak English?
- Do you like talking to people?
- Are you free from July to September?
- Do you know your town well?

Please write to: Peter Mann, Happy Holidays, Central Office, 89 Brook Street, LONDON W1 5PW



UNIT 7 DESCRIBING A HOLIDAY

- 1 Read the information about Robert and Daniella. Make notes about your last holiday.

Questions	Robert	Daniella	Me
Where/go?	Wales	Japan	
When/go?	last June	last October	
How long/stay?	a week	three weeks	
How/travel?	train	plane	
Where/stay?	a bed and breakfast	with friends	
What/do?	went walking in the countryside	visited Tokyo and Kyoto	
What/see?	some beautiful mountains and rivers; <i>not</i> any people!	some beautiful temples; <i>not</i> Mount Fuji	
Enjoy the holiday?	Yes	Yes	



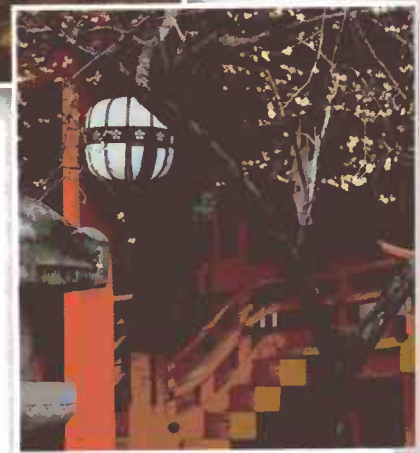
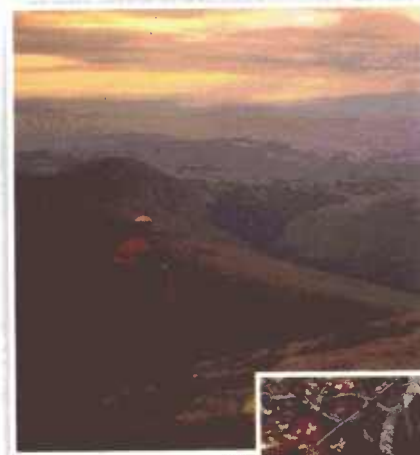
- 2 Ask and answer the questions about Robert with a partner.

Where did he go? **To Wales.**

How long did he stay? **For a week.**

- 3 Complete the questions about Daniella and write short answers.

- Where did she go? **To Japan.**
- When _____?
- How long _____?
- How _____?
- Where _____?
- What _____?
- What _____?
- Did _____? **Yes, she did.**



- 4 Read about Daniella's holiday. Put the verbs in the Past Simple.

My exciting holiday

Last October I (1) _____ (have) a very exciting holiday.

I (2) _____ (go) to Japan for three weeks to stay with friends.

I (3) _____ (travel) by plane. It (4) _____ (be) a long journey but fortunately my friends

(5) _____ (meet) me at the airport and (6) _____ (drive) me straight to their house near

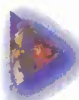
Tokyo. I (7) _____ (stay) with my friends for the first week. In the second week I (8) _____

(visit) Tokyo and then in the third week I (9) _____ (take) the train to Kyoto where I (10)

_____ (see) some beautiful temples and gardens. I (11) _____ (enjoy) the holiday very much

indeed but I (12) _____ (not see) Mount Fuji. Next time I want to climb it with my friends.

- 5 Talk to a partner about your last holiday. Then write about it.



UNIT 8 WRITING ABOUT A FRIEND

Linking words – *because, when, until*

1 Make sentences with a line in A, a word in B, and a line in C.

A	B	C
1 I left the party early	because when until	a she was thirty.
2 Peter couldn't speak		b they came for dinner.
3 Tim didn't see the Colosseum		c I was at school.
4 Eva didn't start learning English		d she couldn't afford them.
5 I didn't enjoy maths lessons		e after midnight.
6 Sally didn't buy the red shoes		f he was nearly four.
7 They didn't go to bed		g I didn't feel well.
8 We met Ken's wife last Saturday		h he was in Rome.

2 Write notes about an old friend. Use these questions to help.

- What is his/her name?
- How often do you meet now?
- Where did you meet?
- What do you do when you meet?
- What did you do together?

Talk to a partner about your notes.

3 Read the text about 'My oldest friend.' Complete the text with words from the box.

and but because so when until

My oldest friend

My oldest friend is called Sandy. We met thirty years ago (1) _____ we were both five years old. It was my first day at school (2) _____ I was very unhappy (3) _____ I wanted my mother. Sandy gave me a sweet (4) _____ we became friends immediately. We were together nearly every day (5) _____ we left school twelve years later.

Then I went to university, (6) _____ Sandy didn't. She married (7) _____ she was just eighteen (8) _____ had three children. I studied for eight years (9) _____ I wanted to be an accountant. I had a lot of new friends, (10) _____ I didn't see Sandy very often. Sometimes we didn't meet for months, (11) _____ we often talked on the telephone.

Now I'm married, too. I live near Sandy (12) _____ we meet every week. She's a student now, (13) _____ I have a baby, (14) _____ we can give each other a lot of advice!



4 Write about your friend. Use your notes to help.



UNIT 9 FILLING IN FORMS Booking a hotel

1 Read the email.

- Who is it from?
- What is it about?
- Who is it to?
- How does it begin and end?

2 These lines are from the email. Where do they go?

- a Could you tell me what time the restaurant closes?
- b I look forward to hearing from you.
- c Could I possibly have a quiet room at the back of the hotel?



From: p.west@uktel.com
To: bookings@liverpoolarms.co.uk
Date: 17 March
Subject: Booking a room

Dear Sir or Madam,

I would like to book a single room at your hotel for the nights of 12, 13, and 14 April.
(1) _____

I understand you have a restaurant.
(2) _____

My details are: 15 Monarch Road, London, NW1 2TS.
Tel: (0207) 566 4945. Please let me know if you need a deposit or a credit card number.

Thank you very much.
(3) _____

Yours faithfully,
Peter West

3 Look at the hotel's online booking form. Complete the form with information about Peter West in exercise 1.

LIVERPOOL • ARMS • HOTEL

ONLINE BOOKING

Please complete this form. All rooms have bath and shower en suite. Room prices include breakfast.

Name	<input type="text"/>	Number of guests	<input type="checkbox"/> Adults	<input type="checkbox"/> Children			
Email	<input type="text"/>	Number of rooms	<input type="checkbox"/> Single	<input type="checkbox"/> Twin	<input type="checkbox"/> Double	<input type="checkbox"/> Family	
Tel/Fax	<input type="text"/>	Check-in	<input type="text"/>	dd/mm/yy	Check-out	<input type="text"/>	dd/mm/yy
Address	<input type="text"/>	Additional information 					
<input type="text"/>							
<input type="text"/>							
Country	<input type="text"/>						

Reset
Send

4 Write an email to book a room at the hotel.

- Book a double room for four nights next month.
- Ask for a room with a view of the sea.
- Ask about Internet and other facilities (phone, television, room service, car parking etc.).
- Give your personal details.

! We can use *which* and *where* to join sentences.

We use *which* for things:

This is the book. **It** has the information.

This is the book **which** has the information.

We use *where* for places:

There's the house. John and Mary live **in it**.

There's the house **where** John and Mary live.

1 Join the sentences with *which* or *where*.

1 Jack wrote the letter. It arrived this morning.

2 There's the park. We play football in it.

3 This is the hotel. I always stay here.

4 Barbara's got a car. It's faster than yours.

2 What is your capital city? What do you know about it? Talk to a partner.

3 Read about London and complete the text using the words in the box.

- a where the Queen lives
- b which is the biggest
- c which are much bigger
- d where the Romans landed
- e where you can buy anything
- f where you can see

4 Write four paragraphs about your capital city. Begin each paragraph with the same words as in the text about London. Write 100–150 words.

Paragraph 1 How big is it? Where is it?

Paragraph 2 What is it famous for?

Paragraph 3 Does it have any problems?

Paragraph 4 What do you like best about it?

MY CAPITAL CITY

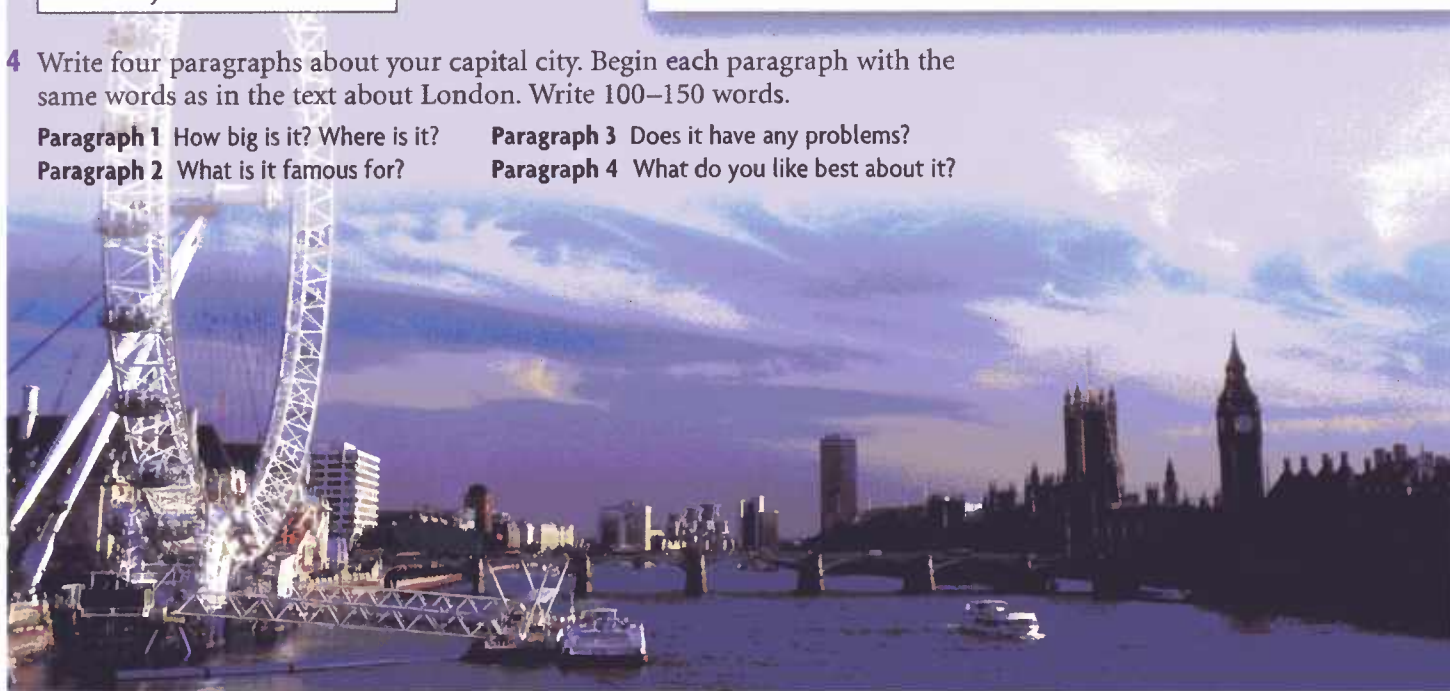
London has a population of about 7,000,000.

It lies on the River Thames, (1) _____ nearly 2,000 years ago. From about 1800 until World War II, London was the biggest city in the world, but now there are many cities (2) _____.

London is famous for many things. Tourists come from all over the world to visit its historic buildings, such as Buckingham Palace, (3) _____, and the Houses of Parliament, (4) _____ and hear the famous clock, Big Ben. They also come to visit its theatres, its museums, and its many shops, such as Harrods, (5) _____. And, of course, they want to ride on the big wheel next to the river!

Like many big cities, London has problems with traffic and pollution. Over 1,000,000 people a day use the London Underground, but there are still too many cars on the streets. The air isn't clean, but it is cleaner than it was 100 years ago.

For me, the best thing about London is the parks. There are five in the city centre. But my children's favourite place is Hamleys, (6) _____ toy shop in the world!





UNIT 11 DESCRIBING PEOPLE

Linking words – *although, but*

! These two sentences have the same meaning. How are they different? Which is more formal?

I like him a lot, **but** I don't love him.

Although I like him a lot, I don't love him.

- 1 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

although because but
too both for example

- 1 My father loves skiing, _____ my mother hates it.
- 2 We stopped playing tennis _____ it started to rain.
- 3 _____ it was cold and wet, we still played tennis.
- 4 My two sisters are very similar. They _____ love dancing and skiing.
- 5 Rosa loves dancing and Hannah loves it _____.
- 6 There's so much to do at the weekend. _____ you can go skiing or swimming.

- 2 Complete the text with the correct linking word from exercise 1.
- 3 Work with a partner. Talk about your brothers, sisters, parents, or children. Are you/they similar? Do you/they like doing the same things?
- 4 Write about two people in your family and compare them. Describe ...
 - what they look like
 - their likes and dislikes
 - their personalities

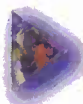


My brother and sister

I have a brother Ben, and a sister Ana. They are a lot younger than me, and (1) although they are twins they don't look similar at all. Ben has got red hair, (2) _____ Ana's hair is blond. They (3) _____ have blue eyes, (4) _____ Ben is much taller than Ana. They are interested in different things (5) _____. (6) _____, Ben likes numbers and letters, but Ana prefers painting and drawing.

(7) _____ they are so different, there are still some things that they (8) _____ like doing. (9) _____, they love coming into my room and playing with my things, (10) _____ they think my things are much more interesting than theirs!

(11) _____ they are sometimes really noisy and annoying, I love them very much (12) _____ they are so funny.



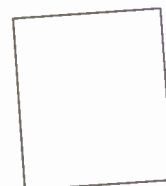
UNIT 12 WRITING A POSTCARD

- 1 Discuss these questions with a partner.
 - Do you often receive postcards? Who from? Where from? Give examples.
 - What was the last postcard you sent? Who to? Where from?
- 2 Read the postcard. Find words for good weather and bad weather.
- 3 Underline the descriptions for a good holiday *or* a bad holiday. Read your postcard to your partner.

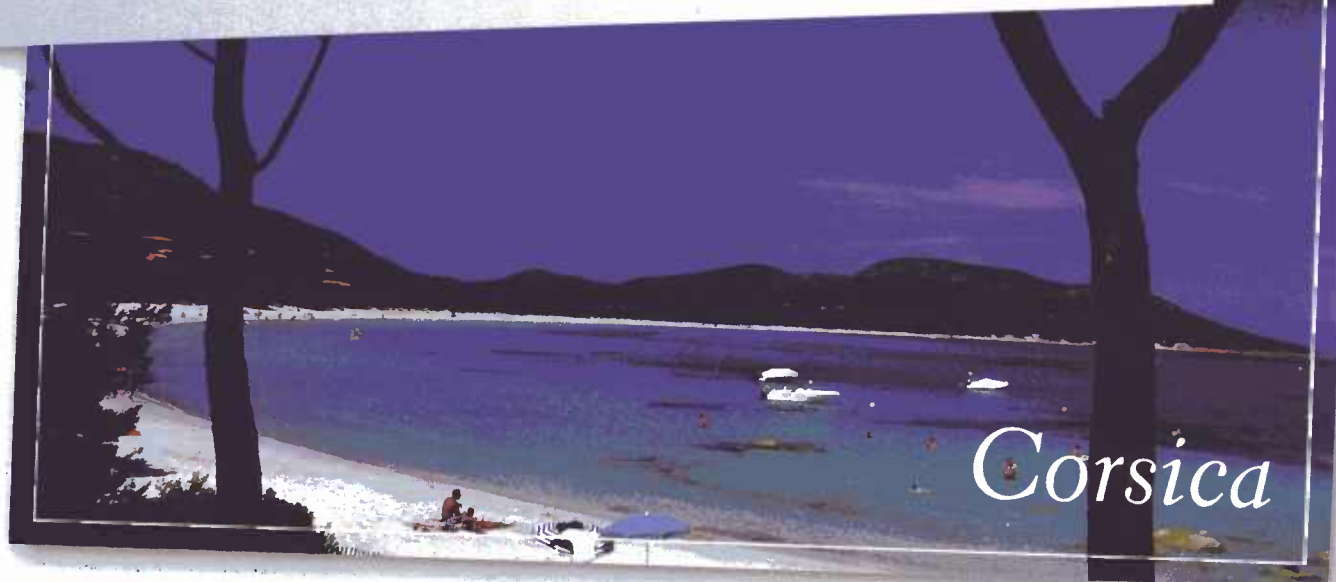
Friday, April 14th

Dear Mum and Dad,

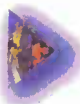
We're having | a wonderful | time here in Corsica,
 | quite a good |
 | and fortunately | the weather is | glorious |. They say
 | but unfortunately | | not very good |
 that the weather here in April is often quite changeable
 so we're | just unlucky |. It is | warm and sunny | nearly
 | very lucky | | cold and cloudy |
 every day so most of the time we | stay in the hotel | and
 | go to the beach |
 | play cards |. Yesterday it was so | hot | that we
 | swim and sunbathe | | foggy |
 couldn't | see the sea |. Tomorrow we're not going to
 | lie in the sun |
 | the beach |, we're going to drive round the island
 | stay in the hotel |
 and go sightseeing.
 See you soon
 Love, Lara and Mick



Mr and Mrs Binehey
 20 Model Farm Road
 Cork City
 Ireland



- 4 Write a postcard to a friend. Write about ...
 - where you are on holiday
 - the weather
 - something you do often
 - something you did yesterday
 - something you are going to do tomorrow



- 1 Do you know the story of *The Emperor's New Clothes*? Discuss what you know.
- 2 Read the story and complete it with the adjectives and adverbs from the box. Use each word once only.
- 3 What stories do you know that begin *Once upon a time ...*? Which is your favourite? Discuss as a class.
- 4 Write your favourite story. Use adjectives and adverbs.
Begin: *Once upon a time ...* End: *... and they lived happily ever after.*

Adjectives	Adverbs
expensive	angrily
beautiful	immediately
embarrassed	loudly
naked	naturally
new	quickly
pleased	suddenly
wonderful	unfortunately
worried	unhappily

The Emperor's New Clothes

Once upon a time there was an Emperor who loved to spend his money on (1) expensive clothes. One day, two tailors arrived at his palace. They said they could make him the most (2) _____ suit, with magic cloth that only clever people could see. 'What a (3) _____ suit to have,' thought the Emperor. 'I'll know (4) _____ who is clever and who is stupid in my palace.'

The Emperor gave the tailors a lot of money and a room in the palace. He was very excited, but he was also (5) _____. 'Oh dear' he thought, 'I hope I can see the magic cloth.' He sent one of his ministers to look first.

The minister went into the tailors' room. 'Oh no! I can't see anything,' he thought (6) _____. 'What can I say to the Emperor?'

'Well?' said one tailor. 'Do you like the suit?'

'Oh, it is excellent!' he said.

'We're very (7) _____ to hear that,' said the tailors.

The minister told the Emperor and the Emperor was delighted. He went to the tailors' room with his minister.

'Look,' said the minister. 'Aren't the colours lovely?' (8) _____ the poor Emperor couldn't see anything at all, but he said 'Oh yes, the suit is wonderful. Thank you.'

(9) _____ everybody wanted to see the suit, so the Emperor put on his (10) _____ clothes and went into the city with his ministers. All the people clapped and cheered (11) _____. The Emperor felt better.

Then (12) _____ a little boy ran out. 'The Emperor isn't wearing any clothes!' he shouted.

'Oh, it's true!' the people said. 'He's as (13) _____ as the day he was born!'

The Emperor was so (14) _____. He ran (15) _____ back to the palace and called (16) _____ for the tailors but they were gone.

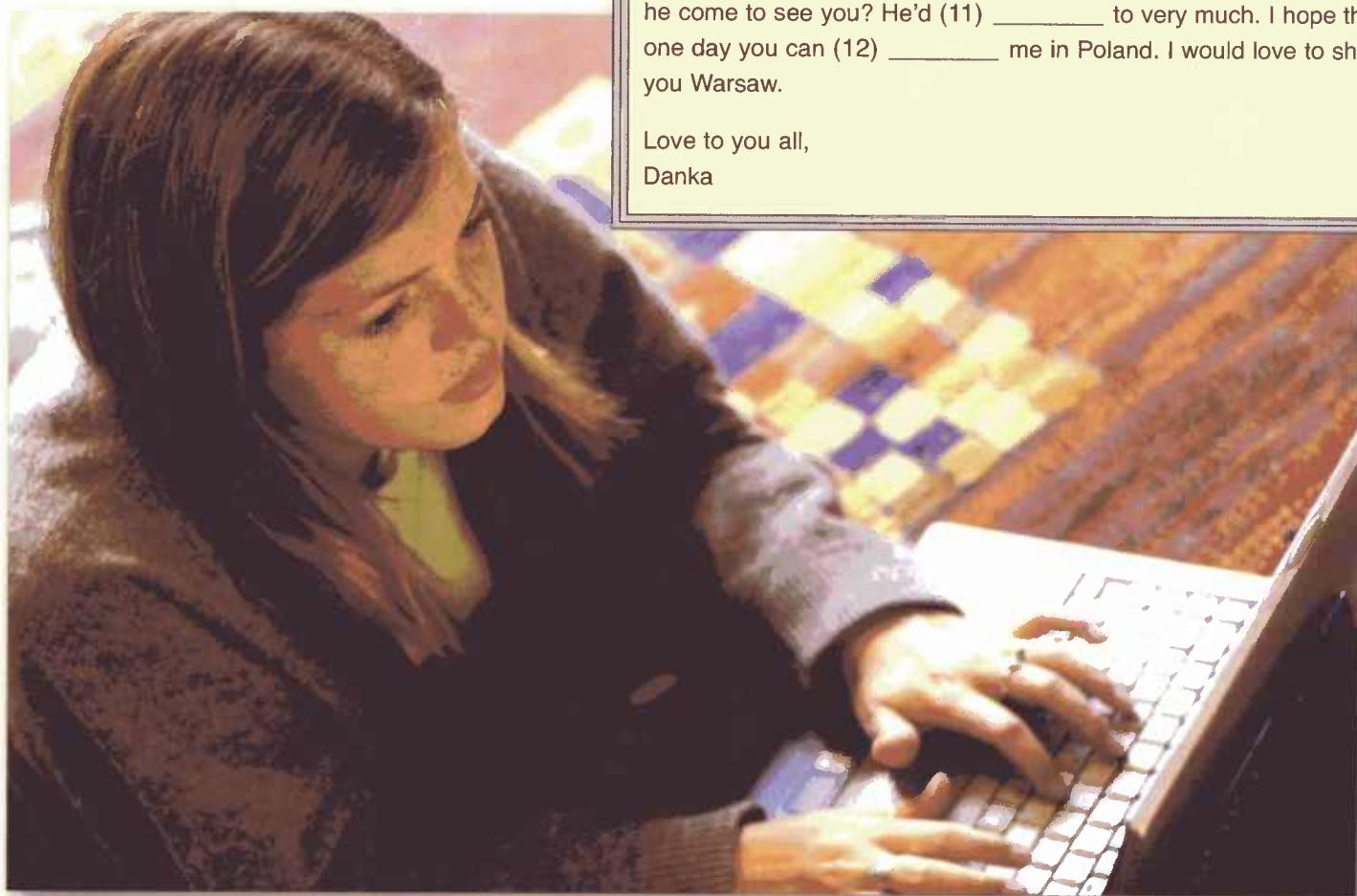




UNIT 14 WRITING AN EMAIL Saying thank you

- 1 Have you ever been to another country to study the language? Where did you go? How long for? What language did you study? Did you have a good time?
- 2 Do you remember Danka who went to study English in Brighton? Look quickly at the email.
 - Where is Danka now?
 - Where are they?
 - Who is Jacek?
 - Who is she writing to?
 - Why is she writing?
- 3 Read the email again and complete it with the words from the box. Check with a partner.

lot	going x2	couldn't
visit	just	has
quickly	much	but
had	like	



From: Danka.2006@star.com

To: Becky@Brighton.ac.uk

Date: 23rd October

Subject: Hi!

Dear Becky and family,

I have (1) _____ arrived back in Poland. It's lovely to see my family again (2) _____. I miss you and all my friends in Brighton. I (3) _____ a wonderful time with you and your family. I enjoyed myself very (4) _____ indeed. Also, it was very kind of you to show me so much of England. I loved (5) _____ to London, and I'll never forget visiting Buckingham Palace and Big Ben.

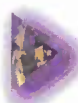
I think that my English (6) _____ improved quite a (7) _____. At first I was so worried because I (8) _____ understand a word. You all spoke so (9) _____, but soon I began to understand more and more.

My brother, Jacek, is (10) _____ to England next month. Can he come to see you? He'd (11) _____ to very much. I hope that one day you can (12) _____ me in Poland. I would love to show you Warsaw.

Love to you all,
Danka

- 4 Write a similar email to someone who you have stayed with.

Tapescripts



UNIT 1

T 1.1 see p6

T 1.2

- A Hello. My name's Lisa. What's your name?
 B Mike.
 A Where are you from, Mike?
 B I'm from Boston. Where are you from?
 A I'm from Boston, too!

T 1.3

- 1 This is Marco. He's from Italy.
 2 This is Emma. She's from England.
 3 This is Lisa and Mike. They're from the USA.

T 1.4 see p8

T 1.5

- 1 He's from Spain.
 2 What's her name?
 3 They're from Japan.
 4 Where's she from?
 5 He's a teacher in Italy.

T 1.6 see p9

T 1.7

Tiago
 My name's Tiago Costa and I'm a student. I'm 18. I'm not married. I have one sister and two brothers. I live in a house in Fortaleza, Brazil. I want to learn English because it's an international language.

T 1.8

The alphabet song
 ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
 That is the English alphabet!

T 1.9 see p10

T 1.10 see p11

T 1.11

- 1 My brother has four children.
 2 I have 10 stamps in my bag.
 3 Hello, extension 4177.
 4 I live at number 19.
 5 Goodbye. See you at five.
 6 Hello. 01913 786 499?

T 1.12

- 1 A Hello, Lisa Jefferson.
 B Hello, Lisa. It's Mike.
 A Mike! How are you?
 B I'm fine, thank you. And you?
 A I'm OK, thanks.
 2 A Bye, Marco! Have a nice day!
 B Thanks, and you. See you later!
 A Yes, at 7.00 at the cinema.
 B Great! Bye, Emma!

- 3 A Hello. 270899.
 B Hi, Alice! It's me, Charles. How are you?
 A Not bad, thanks. And you?
 B Very well, thanks. How are the children?
 A They're fine.

T 1.13 see p11



UNIT 2

T 2.1

- 1 A What's her surname?
 B Jefferson.
 2 A What's her first name?
 B Lisa.
 3 A Where's she from?
 B The USA.
 4 A What's her job?
 B She's a journalist.
 5 A What's her address?
 B 89, Franklin Street, Cambridge, Boston
 6 A What's her phone number?
 B (616) 326 1204.
 7 A How old is she?
 B Twenty-six.
 8 A Is she married?
 B No, she isn't.

T 2.2

- 1 A What's his surname?
 B Jefferson.
 2 A What's his first name?
 B Rudi. That's R-U-D-I.
 3 A Where's he from?
 B The USA.
 4 A What's his job?
 B He's an actor.
 5 A What's his address?
 B 82, Beacon Street, Boston. That's Beacon, B-E-A-C-O-N Street. Boston.
 6 A What's his phone number?
 B (617) 227 5930.
 7 A How old is he?
 B Twenty-eight.
 8 A Is he married?
 B No, he isn't.

T 2.3 see p13

T 2.4 see p14

T 2.5

- 1 It's small. It's big.
 2 It's easy. It's difficult.
 3 He's old. She's young.
 4 They're old. They're new.
 5 It's lovely. It's horrible.
 6 It's fast. It's slow.
 7 They're hot. They're cold.
 8 It's cheap. It's expensive.

T 2.6 see p17

T 2.7

D=Danka, K=Klaus

- 1 D Hello. My name's Danka.
 K Hello, Danka. I'm Klaus.
 D Where are you from, Klaus?
 K I'm from Germany, from Hamburg. And you? Where are you from?
 D I'm from Poland.
 K From Warsaw?
 D Yes, that's right.

S=Simon, C=Class, D=Danka

- 2 S Good morning everybody.
 C Good morning, Simon.
 S How are you all?
 C Fine. Good. OK.
 S How are you Danka?
 D I'm fine, thank you. And you?
 S Very well. Now listen everybody ...

B=Becky, D=Danka, V=Valerie

- 3 B Bye, Danka. Have a nice day.
 D Pardon?
 B Have a good day at the language school.
 D Ah, yes. Thank you.
 B What's your teacher called?
 D My teacher called?
 V What's his name?
 D Oh, yes. His name's Simon.
 B And is he good?
 D My teacher good?
 V Yes. Simon, your teacher, is he a good teacher?
 D Oh yes, yes. Very good, very nice.

T 2.8 see p18

T 2.9

- 1 That's five pounds fifty, please.
 2 Look, it's only twelve pounds.
 3 Here you are. Twenty p change.
 4 Pizza is three pounds seventy-five.
 5 One hundred pounds for that is very expensive.
 6 Nine pounds fifteen, not nine pounds fifty.

T 2.10 see p18

T 2.11

- 1 A Good morning.
 B Good morning. Can I have a coffee, please?
 A Here you are. Anything else?
 B No, thanks.
 A One pound fifty, please.
 B Thanks.
 A Thank you.
 2 A Hi. Can I help?
 B Yes. Can I have a tuna and egg salad, please?
 A Anything to drink?
 B Yeah. A mineral water, please.
 A OK. Here you are.
 B How much is that?
 A Six pounds thirty-five, please.
 B Thanks.

T 2.12 see p19

UNIT 3

T 3.1 see p20 & 21

T 3.2

is	works	likes
comes	speaks	flies
lives	has	loves

T 3.3

- István's a music professor. Pamela's a doctor.
- He comes from Hungary. She comes from Canada.
- He lives in a big city, but she lives in a small town.
- He works four days a week. She works 16 hours a day non-stop.
- He speaks three languages. She speaks to sick people on her radio.
- He loves his job and she loves her job, too.
- He has a daughter. She isn't married.
- He likes playing tennis in his free time. She never has free time.

T 3.4

- A Where does István come from?
B Budapest, in Hungary.
- A What does he do?
B He's a music professor.
- A Does he speak German?
B Yes, he does.
- A Does he speak Spanish?
B No, he doesn't. He doesn't speak Spanish or French.

T 3.5 see p22

T 3.6

- A Where does Pamela come from?
B Canada.
- A What does she do?
B She's a doctor.
- A Does she live in Canada?
B No, she doesn't.
- A Does she like her job?
B Yes, she does.

T 3.7

Iman

- Iman comes from Somalia.
- Iman lives and works in Somalia.
- She's a tourist guide.
- She speaks five languages.
- She likes playing tennis in her free time.
- She isn't married.

Giorgio

- Giorgio works in an office in London.
- He is Italian.
- He has three sons.
- He likes relaxing with his family in his free time.

T 3.8

- She likes her job.
- She loves walking.
- He isn't married.
- Does he have three children?
- What does he do?

T 3.9

- A Good afternoon. Can I have two ice-creams, please?
B Chocolate or vanilla?
A One chocolate, one vanilla, please.
B That's one pound eighty. Anything else?
A No, thank you.
- A Only two letters for you this morning, Mrs Craig.
B Thank you very much, Mr McSporran. And how's Mrs McSporran this morning?
A Oh, she's very well, thank you. She's busy in the shop.
- A A glass of wine before bed, my dear?
B Oh, yes please.
A Here you are.
B Thank you, my dear. I'm very tired this evening.
- A Hello, Mr McSporran.
B Good morning, boys and girls. Hurry up, we're late.
A Can I sit here, Mr McSporran?
C No, no, I want to sit there.
B Be quiet all of you, and SIT DOWN!

T 3.10

- A pilot flies planes.
- A chef cooks in a restaurant.
- A nurse looks after people in hospital.
- A lawyer helps people in court.
- An actor makes films.
- A journalist writes for a newspaper.
- A model wears beautiful clothes.
- An architect designs buildings.
- A shop assistant sells things.

T 3.11 see p26

T 3.12

- It's five o'clock. It's eight o'clock.
It's half past five. It's half past eleven.
It's quarter past five. It's quarter past two.
It's quarter to six. It's quarter to nine.
It's five past five. It's ten past five.
It's twenty past five. It's twenty-five past five.
It's twenty-five to six. It's twenty to six.
It's ten to six. It's five to six.

T 3.13 see p27

UNIT 4

T 4.1

Ceri is 28 years old and lives in Cardiff, Wales. She works hard as a lawyer from Monday to Friday, but she doesn't relax at weekends. She plays rugby for the Women's Welsh Rugby team. On Saturdays she trains with her team at the Rugby Club, and on Sundays she plays in a match. She has no free time, but she loves her job and playing rugby.

T 4.2

I love my job as a family lawyer, because I like helping people. But I love playing rugby, too, so my life is very busy!
Every lunchtime I go running in the park near my office. On Monday and Thursday evenings I go to the swimming pool with my boyfriend Alex.
On Tuesday and Friday mornings I get up at 5.30 and go to the gym before work. And on Wednesday evenings I train with my team at the club.
On Friday evenings I just relax because I'm usually very tired! I sometimes visit my sister. She lives in the centre of Cardiff, too. Or I cook a nice dinner at home with Alex. We love cooking. After dinner we often watch a DVD.
We never go out on Saturday evenings, because I always play in a match on Sundays. I want our team to win the next World Cup!

T 4.3

Q=Question, C=Ceri

- Where do you work?
C In Cardiff.
- Do you like your work?
C Yes, I do.
- Do you relax at weekends?
C No, I don't.
- Why don't you relax at weekends?
C Because I play rugby.

T 4.4

- A What time do you go to bed?
B At eleven o'clock.
- A Where do you go on holiday?
B To Spain or Portugal.
- A What do you do on Sundays?
B I always relax.
- A When do you do your homework?
B After dinner.
- A Who do you live with?
B My mother and sisters.
- A Why do you like your job?
B Because it's interesting.
- A How do you travel to school?
B By bus.
- A Do you go out on Friday evenings?
B Yes, I do sometimes.

T 4.5

- What does she do on Sundays?
- Do you stay at home on Thursday evenings?
- He lives here.
- What do you do on Saturday evenings?
- I read a lot.
- Why don't you like your job?

T 4.6 see p32 & 33

T 4.7

- 1 A So, do you like Norway, Mick?
 B Yes, it's beautiful. Look at the mountains and blue sky! I love skiing here.
 A Yes, I love it too. I ski here every winter and spring.
 B You are lucky.
 A I know! Do you want a coffee now?
 B Yes, please. Good idea.
- 2 D Phew! It's hot today.
 M It is. Daniella, here are the drinks.
 D OK, Mum!
 M Bob, how are the hamburgers?
 B They're ready!
 M Lovely. And here's the salad. Daniella, can you tell your brother that lunch is ready?
 D Sure, Mum.
 M Thanks. Bob, come and have a drink!
 B Great!
- 3 T Hello! Can you help me? Can you speak English?
 S Yes. A little.
 T Can you tell me – what festival is this?
 S It's our Flower Festival. We have it every February.
 T It's so beautiful! I love the small pink and white flowers.
 S They are orchids.
 T Wow! There are hundreds!
 S Do you like dancing? We have Thai dancing here this evening.
 T Oh yes. I want to see that!

Song: Teacher's Book p139

T 4.8

- 1 A I'm sorry I'm late. The traffic is bad today.
 B Don't worry. Come and sit down. We're on page 25.
- 2 A Excuse me.
 B Yes?
 A Do you have a dictionary?
 B I'm sorry, I don't. It's at home.
 A It doesn't matter.
- 3 A It's very hot in here. Can I open the window?
 B Pardon?
 A The window, can I open it?
 B Yes, of course.
- 4 A Excuse me!
 B Oh, good morning Marco. Can I help you?
 A Yes, please. Can I have a ticket for the trip to York?
 B Yes, of course. It's eighty pounds. Do you want to pay twenty pounds deposit now?
 A Sorry. What does 'deposit' mean?
 B It means you can pay twenty pounds now and sixty pounds later.
 A Ah! I see. Yes, please.

T 4.9

I'm sorry I'm late.
 Don't worry.
 Excuse me.
 I'm sorry.
 It doesn't matter.
 Pardon?
 Yes, of course.
 I see.
 Excuse me!
 What does 'deposit' mean?

**UNIT 5****T 5.1**

- A Is there a television?
 B Yes, there is.
 A Is there a computer?
 B No, there isn't.
 A Are there any books?
 B Yes, there are.
 A How many books are there?
 B There are a lot.
 A Are there any pictures?
 B No, there aren't.

T 5.2**What's in your picture?**

There are three people in the living room. A man and a woman on the sofa and a little girl in the armchair. There's a radio on the coffee table and a rug under it. There's a cat on the rug in front of the fire. There are a lot of pictures on the walls but there aren't any photographs. There are two plants on the floor next to the television and some flowers on the small table next to the sofa.

T 5.3**Suzie's kitchen**

S=Suzie, M=Matt

- S And this is the kitchen.
 M Mmm, it's very nice.
 S Well, it's not very big, but there are a lot of cupboards. And there's a new fridge, and a cooker. That's new, too.
 M But what's in all these cupboards?
 S Well, not a lot. There are some cups, but there aren't any plates. And I have some knives and forks, but I don't have any spoons!
 M Do you have any glasses?
 S No. Sorry.
 M Never mind. We can drink this champagne from those cups! Cheers!

T 5.4**Yoshi's briefcase**

What's in my briefcase? Well, there's a newspaper – a Japanese newspaper – and there's a dictionary – my Japanese/English dictionary. I have some pens, three, I think. Also I have a notebook for vocabulary. I write words in that every day. And of course I have my keys – my car keys and my house keys. Oh yes, very important, there are some photos of my family, my wife, and my daughter. And there's my mobile. I phone home to Tokyo every night. That's all, I think. I don't have any stamps and my address book is in my hotel.

T 5.5**Homes around the world****Candy and Bert from New England**

- C Our house is quite old, about fifty years old. It's in the centre of the village near the church. All the houses here are white. We have a living room, quite a big kitchen and three bedrooms, and a big verandah all around the house.
 B Our children aren't at home now. They both have jobs in the city, so most of the time it's just Candy and me.

- C Yes, so in summer we do bed and breakfast for tourists. We have lovely visitors from all over the world.

Alise from Samoa

I live with my family in a house near the sea. We have an open house, ... er ... that is ... er ... our house doesn't have any walls. Houses in Samoa don't have walls because it is very, very hot, but we have blinds to stop the rain and sun. Our house is in the old style. We have only *one* room for living and sleeping, so it is both a bedroom and a living room. We have rugs and we sit and sleep on the floor.

Kwan from Korea

I live and work in Seoul, the capital city of Korea. It's a big, modern, exciting city, but it is quite expensive. My flat is very, very small. I have three rooms: a small kitchen, a bathroom, and a room for sitting, eating and sleeping. But I live in the centre of the city, and there are a lot of shops, restaurants and bars near my flat. My work place is near too. I live alone at the moment, but I want to marry my girlfriend next year.

Manola from Lisbon

I live in the old town near the sea. It is called the Alfama. I have a very beautiful flat. There's just *one* room in my flat, one very big room with one very big window. My bed's next to the window so I see the sea and all the lights of the city when I go to sleep. I live alone, but I have a cat and I'm near the shops and lots of friends come to visit me. I love my flat.

T 5.6

- 1 A Excuse me! Is there a newsagent's near here?
 B Yes. It's in Church Street. Take the first street on the right. It's next to the music shop.
 A OK. Thanks.
- 2 A Is there a post office near here?
 B Go straight ahead, and it's on the left, next to the pub.
 A Thanks a lot.
- 3 A Excuse me! Is there a café near here?
 B There's an Internet café in Park Lane next to the bank, and there's an Italian restaurant in Church Street next to the travel agent's.
 A Is that one far?
 B No. Just two minutes, that's all.

T 5.7 see p43

UNIT 6

T 6.1 see p44

T 6.2 see p44

T 6.3

- 1 I can speak French, but I can't speak German.
- 2 He can't dance, but he can sing.
- 3 'Can you cook?' 'Yes, I can.'
- 4 They can ski, but they can't swim.
- 5 We can dance and we can sing.
- 6 'Can she drive?' 'No, she can't.'

T 6.4

Lucia
Well, there are a lot of things I can't do. I can't drive a car, of course, I'm only 14. Languages? Well, I can't speak French, but I can speak Spanish. My mother's Spanish, and we often go to Spain. My mum's a really good cook. She can cook really well, not just Spanish food, all kinds of food, but I can't cook at all. I just love eating! What about sports? Er ... I think I'm good at quite a lot of sports. I can play tennis, and I can ski. Sometimes we go skiing in the Spanish Pyrenees. And of course I can swim. But musical instruments – no – I can't play any at all. But I can dance! I dance flamenco with my mum sometimes. I love it. And I can use a computer, of course. All my friends can.

T 6.5 see p46

T 6.6 see p46

T 6.7

E=Emma, M=Marco

- E** Were you at Charlotte's party last Saturday?
M Yes, I was.
E Was it good?
M Well, it was OK.
E Were there many people?
M Yes, there were.
E Was Pascal there?
M No, he wasn't. And where were you? Why weren't you there?
E Oh ... I couldn't go because I was at Sergio's party! It was brilliant!
M Oh!

T 6.8

- 1 I can hear you, but I can't see you.
- 2 There are three bedrooms in our house.
- 3 I don't know where Jill lives.
- 4 My son lives near the sea.
- 5 Don't wear that hat, buy a new one!
- 6 No, I can't come to your party.
- 7 You were right. Sally can't come for dinner.
- 8 Their daughter could write when she was three.
- 9 I know my answers are right.

T 6.9

Operator

International Directory Enquiries. Which country, please?

- ...
 And which town?
 ...
 Can I have the last name, please?
 ...
 And the initial?
 ...
 What's the address?
 ...
 The number you require is 00 1 616 326 1204.

T 6.10

- 1 **A** Hello.
B Hello. Can I speak to Jo, please?
A This is Jo.
B Oh! Hi, Jo. This is Nicola. Is Sunday still OK for tennis?
A Yes. That's fine.
B Great! I'll see you on Sunday at ten, then. Bye!
A Bye!
- 2 **A** Hello.
B Hello. Is that Emma?
A No it isn't. I'll just get her.
C Hello, Emma here.
B Hi, Emma. It's Marco. Listen! There's a party at my house on Saturday. Can you come?
C Oh sorry, Marco. I can't. It's my sister's wedding.
B Oh, never mind. Perhaps next time. Bye!
C Bye!
- 3 **A** Good morning. Dixons Electrical. How can I help you?
B Good morning. Can I speak to the manager, please?
A I'm afraid Mr Smith isn't in his office at the moment. Can I take a message?
B Don't worry. I'll ring back later.
A All right. Goodbye.
B Goodbye.

T 6.11 see p51

UNIT 7

T 7.1

A Shirley Temple Black

Shirley Temple Black is a retired politician. She lives with her husband in California. She likes cooking and playing with her grandchildren. Also, she sometimes works at Stanford University for the Institute of International Studies. She goes there every month and meets foreign ministers. They discuss world problems.

T 7.2 see p52

T 7.3

liked	studied
looked	acted
worked	decided
earned	wanted
loved	started

T 7.4

C Why did she stop acting?

From the age of three Shirley worked very hard for 20th Century Fox.

'I acted in three or four movies every year. Fortunately I liked acting!' And the public loved her and her films. The films earned over \$35 million.

She says, 'I didn't go to school. I studied at the studio and my mother looked after me there.' So why did she stop acting? When she was 12, she finally started school. She was a good student and she wanted to go to university. She was still a good actor, but her films weren't so popular, because she wasn't a little girl any more. She decided to change her career. It was a big change – from actor to politician.

She says, 'I was a politician for 35 years, but people only remember my movies!'

T 7.5

- 1 **A** When did she start in films?
B When she was only three years old!
- 2 **A** How many films did she act in?
B Over 50.
- 3 **A** Who did she work for?
B 20th Century Fox Film Studios.
- 4 **A** How much money did her films earn?
B Over \$35 million.
- 5 **A** Where did she study?
B At the film studio. She didn't go to school.
- 6 **A** When did she start school?
B When she was 12.
- 7 **A** What did she want to do?
B Go to university.
- 8 **A** Why did she stop acting?
B Because her movies weren't so popular any more.

T 7.6 see p54

T 7.7

wanted	danced
loved	retired
acted	earned
looked	liked

T 7.8

was	died
began	became
came	won
got	made
sang	bought
left	sold
had	

T 7.9**1984 The year I was born****J=James, D=Dad, M=Mum**

- J** Dad, tell me about when I was born. When did you leave Hong Kong?
- D** Erm ... you were born in January, and we left later that year and came back to Britain.
- M** Yes, you got a job in London, didn't you, Robert?
- D** That's right. Remember Margaret Thatcher was Prime Minister, then.
- M** Of course. She was Europe's first woman Prime Minister, James.
- J** I know that, Mum. But who was in the White House?
- D** Ronald Reagan. Actually, he began his second four years then?
- M** He was an actor before. Did you know that, James?
- J** No, I didn't, Mum!
- D** And that was the year that the Soviet leader, Yuri Andropov, died.
- M** Oh, yes. He was only leader for a year. Oh, and I remember – the Soviet Union didn't go to the Olympic Games that year. Isn't that right, Robert? The 1984 Games – were they in Los Angeles?
- D** Yes, they were. Remember Carl Lewis won four gold medals that year.
- J** That was in athletics, wasn't it?
- M** That's right.
- D** Oh, and remember little Tiger Woods?
- J** The golfer?
- D** Yes. He became junior champion that year. He was only eight years old.
- J** Wow. Hey, 1984 was a busy year. Did anything else happen?
- M** Well ... Apple Macintosh made a new computer. I remember because I bought one. Millions of people bought one.
- J** And what about music? Was Michael Jackson famous then?
- D** Yes, he was. His album *Thriller* came out that year. It sold millions.
- J** 43 million, actually. It's the best-selling album of all time!
- D** Really?
- M** Oh, and remember, Robert? Madonna sang *Holiday!* (sings)
- J** Oh, no! Stop it, Mum! You sing that every time we go on holiday!
- M** I know. I like it. Anyway, who else was famous, then, Robert?
- D** Let's see. Paul McCartney ... Tina Turner, David Bowie – they all had hit records that year.
- J** Wow, that's amazing! They're all still famous today.

T 7.10

orange juice
 railway station
 swimming pool
 handbag
 boyfriend
 newspaper
 film star
 birthday card
 washing machine
 living room
 car park

T 7.11

- 1 **A** I can't find my handbag.
B Here it is!
A Oh yes, thank you. Where did you find it?
B In the living room where you left it!
- 2 **A** Would you like some chocolate cake?
B No, thanks, just orange juice for me.
A But I made this cake for you.
B Did you? I'm sorry! I don't like chocolate cake.
- 3 **A** I have nothing to wear for your boyfriend's party.
B What about your white jeans?
A They aren't clean.
B Well, wash them. You have a washing machine, don't you?
- 4 **A** Do you want anything from the shops?
B A newspaper, please. *The Times*, I think.
A OK.
B Oh, and can you take this letter to the post office?
A Sure.

T 7.12

first	thirteenth
second	sixteenth
third	seventeenth
fourth	twentieth
fifth	twenty-first
sixth	thirtieth
tenth	thirty-first
twelfth	

T 7.13

- 1 The first of April
 April the first
- 2 The second of March
 March the second
- 3 The seventeenth of September
 September the seventeenth
- 4 The nineteenth of November
 November the nineteenth
- 5 The twenty-third of June
 June the twenty-third
- 6 The twenty-ninth of February, nineteen seventy-six
- 7 The nineteenth of December, nineteen eighty-three
- 8 The third of October, nineteen ninety-nine
- 9 The thirty-first of May, two thousand
- 10 The fifteenth of July, two thousand and seven

T 7.14

- 1 The fourth of January
- 2 May the seventh, 1997
- 3 The fifteenth of August, 2001
- 4 **A** It was a Friday.
B No, it wasn't. It was a Thursday.
A No, I remember. It was Friday the thirteenth. The thirteenth of July.
- 5 **A** Oh no! I forgot your birthday.
B It doesn't matter, really.
A It was last Sunday, wasn't it? The thirtieth. November the thirtieth.
- 6 **A** Hey! Did you know that Shakespeare was born and died on the same day?
B That's not possible!
A Yes, it is. He was born on April the twenty-third, fifteen sixty-four and he died on April the twenty-third, sixteen sixteen.

**UNIT 8****T 8.1****The photograph****Louis Daguerre from France**

Louis Daguerre was a painter for the French opera. But he wanted to make a new type of picture. He started his experiments in the 1820s. Twelve years later he invented the photograph. He sold his idea to the French government in 1839 and the government gave it to the world. Daguerre called the first photographs 'daguerreotypes'. They became popular very fast. By 1850, there were 70 daguerreotype studios in New York City.

The windscreen wiper**Mary Anderson from the USA**

Mary Anderson often visited New York City by car. In winter she noticed that when it rained or snowed, drivers got out of their cars all the time to clean their windows. In 1903 she began designing something to clean windows from inside the car. People, especially men, laughed at her idea. But they didn't laugh for long. She invented the windscreen wiper in 1905. And by 1916 all American cars had them.

The bicycle**Kirkpatrick Macmillan from Scotland**

Long ago in 1490, Leonardo da Vinci drew a design for the modern bicycle. But the first person to make a bicycle was Kirkpatrick Macmillan in 1839. He lived in Scotland, so people didn't hear about his invention for a long time. Twenty years later, another bicycle came from France. In 1895 the bike became cheap and everyone could have one. Now people, especially women, could travel to the next town. It helped them find someone to marry!

T 8.2

- 1 He didn't invent the bicycle. He invented the photograph.
- 2 He didn't give his idea to the French government. He sold it to them.
- 3 She didn't live in New York City. She often visited New York City.
- 4 All cars didn't have windscreen wipers by 1916. Only American cars had them.

- 5 Leonardo da Vinci didn't make the first bicycle. Kirkpatrick Macmillan made it.
6 He didn't come from France. He came from Scotland.

T 8.3 see p62

T 8.4

My very first love

C=Carly, N=Ned

- C I first met Ned when I was just ten years old. He was sixteen, er, very good-looking, and of course he had a girlfriend ... a really beautiful girlfriend. I hated her.
N Hmm. I can remember Carly when she was only ten. She played in the street. She played on the corner near my house. I was sixteen. I had a girlfriend – she didn't like you, did she, Carly?
C Hmm, no ... because she knew I liked you!!! You married her, didn't you? Four years later ... I was fourteen, I cried and cried ... I remember it well.
N Yeah – I was only twenty. I wasn't ready. It was a big mistake – a big mistake.
C You moved to London and had Michelle, your daughter.
N Yeah – my little Michelle, she's great ...
C Yeah, she's lovely ... And I finished school and then I went to college. I didn't marry ... I had one or two boyfriends but nobody special. And two or three years later, my brother had a party. He invited you, and you came ... And when I saw you, all the old feelings came back, and you told me you were divorced ...
N Yeah, I was divorced and at my parents' house again. You were twenty-one, and just ... wonderful. And we just fell in love.
C Yes, that's what happened. That was three years ago – now I'm twenty-four, we're married and we have a new baby, and Michelle is with us too. I'm so lucky ... I married my very first love.

Do mothers know best?

E=Eric, L=Lori

- E Our story is easy. We didn't do anything. It was our mothers who did it all!
L Yes. You see, our mothers are friends. They met one summer by the lake. They both have little summer houses there. And, of course, they talked a lot about their children.
E ... and they decided that they wanted us to meet.
L We both thought this wasn't a very good idea!
E When my mom said to me 'I know a nice girl for you,' I just thought, 'No way.'
L Me, too! You see, my mom did this a lot, and it was usually terrible.
E But we finally said 'OK' – just for some peace.
L I took my sister with me ...
E ... and I took my best friend, Steve.
L But I was so surprised! Eric was wonderful!

- E And of course, I thought the same about Lori. We all had a great time by the lake that summer. And at the end of the summer I knew I was in love with Lori.
L That was four years ago, and our wedding is in the fall. Our mothers are very happy, and we are, too!
E Yes. Sometimes mothers know best!

Song: Teacher's Book p144

T 8.5 see p64

T 8.6

- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| 1 born | 4 answer |
| 2 bought | 5 cupboard |
| 3 world | 6 Christmas |

T 8.7 see p64

T 8.8

- 1 Happy birthday to you.
Happy birthday to you.
Happy birthday, dear Grandma,
Happy birthday to you.
2 A Did you get any Valentine cards?
B Yes, I did. Listen to this.
*Roses are red. Violets are blue.
You are my Valentine
And I love you.*
A Wow! Do you know who it's from?
B No idea!
3 A Wake up, Mummy! Happy Mother's Day!
B Thank you, darling. Oh, what beautiful flowers, and a cup of tea!
A And I made you a card! Look!
B It's lovely. What a clever boy!
4 A Congratulations!
B Thank you very much!
A When's the big day?
B Pardon?
A When's your wedding day?
B The 26th June. Didn't you get your invitation?
5 A It's midnight! Happy New Year everybody!
B Happy New Year!
C Happy New Year!
6 A Thank goodness! It's Friday!
B Yeah. Have a nice weekend!
A Same to you.
7 A Ugh! Work again. I hate Monday mornings!
B Me, too. Did you have a good weekend?
A Yes, I did. It was great.



UNIT 9

T 9.1

D = Daisy, P = Piers

- D Mmm, I love apple juice. Do you like it Piers?
P No – it's disgusting. I like Cola, ... and I love beer.
D Yuck! You don't! You don't drink beer!
P Yes, I do. Sometimes my dad gives me some of his beer – and I love it.
D Well, that's different ... My dad drinks coffee – I don't like coffee at all. But my mum drinks tea and I love tea – with lots of milk and sugar.
P No, I don't like tea or coffee, just cola – oh and orange juice. It's funny – I like orange juice, but I don't like oranges. I don't like fruit very much at all. Except bananas – I quite like bananas.
D Really? I like all fruit – apples, oranges, bananas, and I love strawberries. And ... what about vegetables, do you like them?
P No – I don't eat vegetables.
D What? Never? Not even potatoes? You eat chips – I know you do.
P Yeah – OK, I eat potatoes – especially chips. Chips and hamburgers. I love that for my dinner.
D I don't like hamburgers – my favourite dinner is fish and chips with peas.
P Fish – yuk! Peas – yuk!
D I like vegetables – especially carrots and peas, oh and tomatoes. Hey, are tomatoes fruit or vegetable?
P I don't know. Anyway, I don't like tomatoes – except on pizza or with pasta and cheese. I love pizza and pasta.
D Me too.
P Anyway, I know your favourite food.
D No, you don't!
P Yes, I do. It's chocolate – all girls like chocolate!
D Boys like chocolate too! You ate all those chocolate biscuits at my house last week.
P They were biscuits. That's different. Anyway – you ate more than me ...
D No, I didn't!
P Yes, you did!
D Didn't!
P Did!

T 9.2 see p67

T 9.3

- 1 Would you like a ham sandwich?
No, thanks. I'm not hungry.
2 Do you like Ella?
Yes. She's very nice.
3 Would you like a cold drink?
Yes, cola, please.
4 Can I help you?
Yes. I'd like some stamps, please.
5 What sports do you do?
Well, I like swimming very much.
6 Excuse me, are you ready to order?
Yes. I'd like a steak, please.

T 9.4

- 1 A Good afternoon. Can I help you?
- 2 B Who's your favourite writer?
- 3 What would you like for your birthday?
- 4 Do you like animals?
- 5 Here's the wine list, sir.
- 6 Have some ice-cream with your strawberries.

T 9.5

- 1 A Good afternoon. Can I help you?
B Yes. I'd like some fruit, please.
- 2 A Who's your favourite writer?
B I like books by John Grisham.
- 3 A What would you like for your birthday?
B I'd like a new bike.
- 4 A Do you like animals?
B I like cats, but I don't like dogs.
- 5 A Here's the wine list, sir.
B We'd like a bottle of Italian red wine.
- 6 A Have some ice-cream with your strawberries.
B No, thanks. I don't like ice-cream.

T 9.6**At the market**

M = Mum, P = Piers, S = Stallholder

- M Piers! Hurry up!
- P Aw, Mum, I don't like shopping.
- M Come on, Piers. I need your help.
- P OK.
-
- S Good morning Madam. How can I help you today?
- M Well, I'd like some apple juice, please.
- S How many bottles?
- M Two, please.
- P But Mum, ... I don't like apple juice.
- M Shh Piers. It's good for you. Thank you. Here ... You can carry them.
- P Oh no!
- M And a kilo of tomatoes, please.
- S No problem. Lovely and fresh these tomatoes are. There we are.
- M And I'd like some of that cheddar cheese, please.
- S This one? How much? Is this much OK?
- M That's fine, thanks. And ... is there any brown bread? I can't see any.
- S Sorry, no, there isn't – but there's some nice white bread. Look! It's homemade.
- M Erm ...
- P Mum, I really like white bread. Please can we have it?
- M Oh, OK then. Yes, thanks.
- S Anything else?
- P Oh yeah! Mum! Look at those cakes!
- M Shh Piers. ... Um ... oh yes, some apples.
- S How many – one bag or two?
- M Two bags, please.
- P Oh yuck. Can't we have bananas?
- M No, we can't. Here. Take these bags for me.
- P Oh Mum! They're heavy!
- M Thanks. ... How much is all that?
- S Let's see, that's ten pounds and eighty-five pence.
- M Here you are.
- S Thanks. And here's your change.
- M Thanks. Bye!
-
- P Phew! Is that everything?
- M No, erm, ... I still need erm ...

- P Mum, not more. I hate shopping!
- M ... need to buy your new trainers, but if you don't want to ...
- P New trainers – cool!
- M ... But I thought you didn't like shopping ...
- P Yeah, but ...

T 9.7**My favourite national food****Anke**

One dish that is very famous in my country is 'Sachertorte'. It is a kind of chocolate cake and you eat it with cream. I love it! The famous Café Sacher is in the centre of Vienna. They say a chef called Franz Sacher invented it there. When I am in Vienna, I always go to Café Sacher for some of their cake and a nice black coffee.

Graham

Now in my job, I travel the world, and I like all kinds of food ... but my favourite, my favourite is ... er ... I always have it as soon as I come home ... is a full English breakfast. Bacon, eggs, sausage, mushrooms, tomatoes, and of course, toast. I love it, not every day, but when I'm at home we have it every Sunday. Mmmm! I'd like it right now. Delicious.

Sergio

We love eating in my country! One of my favourite national dishes is called 'bruschetta'. This is actually toast, but you make it with special bread. You can eat it with a lot of things, but my favourite bruschetta has tomatoes, garlic, and olive oil on it. In my town there is a 'bruschetteria'. This is a small café – selling only toast! It's my favourite place to go.

Madalena

One kind of food that my country is very famous for is meat, especially beef. Everybody eats a lot of meat here. My family eats beef three or four times a week. There are a lot of different beef dishes, but my favourite is 'bife de chorizo.' This is a big steak! My mum cooks it with tomatoes and chilli. Delicious!

T 9.8

- 1 Would you like some more rice?
Yes, please. It's delicious.
- 2 Could you pass the salt, please?
Yes, of course. Here you are.
- 3 Could I have a glass of water, please?
Do you want sparkling or still?
- 4 Does anybody want more wine?
Yes, please. I'd love some.
- 5 How would you like your coffee?
Black, no sugar, please.
- 6 This is delicious! Can you give me the recipe?
Yes, of course. I'm glad you like it.
- 7 Do you want help with the washing-up?
No, of course not. We have a dishwasher.

T 9.9 see p73**T 9.10**

- 1 A Can I have a cheese sandwich, please?
B Yes, of course. That's £1.75.
- 2 A Could you tell me the time, please?
B It's just after ten.
- 3 A Can you take me to the station, please?
B Jump in.

- 4 A Can I see the menu, please?
B Here you are. And would you like a drink to start?
- 5 A Could you lend me some money, please?
B Not again! How much would you like this time?
- 6 A Can you help me with my homework, please?
B What is it? French? I can't speak a word of French.
- 7 A Can I borrow your dictionary, please?
B Yes, if I can find it. I think it's in my bag.

**UNIT 10****T 10.1**

J = Joel, A = Andy

- J I prefer city life. It's faster, more modern, and more exciting than country life.
- A Yes, but city life's also more dangerous. The country's slower and safer than the city. I prefer the country. It's more relaxing.
- J Well, it's certainly more relaxing, but that's because it's more boring!

T 10.2 see p74**T 10.3**

- 1 A Life in the country is slower than city life.
B Yes, the city's much faster.
- 2 A New York is safer than Los Angeles.
B No, it isn't. New York is much more dangerous.
- 3 A Seoul is bigger than Beijing.
B No, it isn't! It's much smaller.
- 4 A Madrid is more expensive than Rome.
B No, it isn't. Madrid is much cheaper.
- 5 A The buildings in Rome are more modern than the buildings in Prague.
B No, they aren't. They're much older.
- 6 A Cafés in London are better than cafés in Paris.
B No! Cafés in London are much worse.

T 10.4**Country life**

J = Joel, A = Andy

- J So, Andy, tell me, why did you leave London? You had a good job.
- A Yes, but I've got a better job here.
- J And you had a nice flat in London.
- A Well, I've got a nicer place here. It's a cottage!
- J Really? How many bedrooms has it got?
- A Three. And it's got a garden. It's bigger than my flat in London and it's cheaper.
- J But you haven't got any friends!
- A I've got a lot of new friends here. People are much friendlier than in London.
- J But the country's so boring!
- A No, it isn't. I've got a surfboard now and I go surfing at weekends. Appleton has got a cinema, restaurants, pubs, and a nightclub. And the air is cleaner and the streets are safer.
- J OK. OK. Everything is better! Can I come next weekend?
- A Of course you can!

T 10.5

- 1 That house is very big.
Yes, it's the biggest house in the village.
- 2 The Ritz is a very expensive hotel.
Yes, it's the most expensive hotel in London.
- 3 Appleton is a very pretty village.
Yes, it's the prettiest village in England.
- 4 New York is a very cosmopolitan city.
Yes, it's the most cosmopolitan city in the world.
- 5 Brad Pitt is a very popular film star.
Yes, he's the most popular film star in America.
- 6 Miss Smith is a very funny teacher.
Yes, she's the funniest teacher in our school.
- 7 Anna is a very intelligent student.
Yes, she's the most intelligent student in the class.
- 8 This is a very easy exercise.
Yes, it's the easiest exercise in the book.

T 10.6 see p77**T 10.7**

Musical excerpts: flamenco; tango; salsa

T 10.8

- 1 Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
- 2 The Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco is the longest bridge in the USA.
- 3 The Caspian Sea isn't a sea, it's the largest lake in the world.
- 4 Rotterdam is the busiest port in Europe. Ships from all over the world stop there.
- 5 The Empire State Building in New York was the tallest building in the world for over 40 years.
- 6 A church is much smaller than a cathedral.

T 10.9

wood	village
farm	cottage
factory	church
field	building
theatre	

T 10.10

J = Joel, A = Andy

- J** So how do I find your cottage, then?
- A** Have you got a pen and paper?
- J** Erm ... yes, I have.
- A** OK. Well, leave the A34 at Apple Cross. Turn left at the traffic lights. Then go down the hill, and under the first bridge. OK? Then go over the second bridge, and along the road by the river. Go past the pub, and turn right up the hill. Go round the corner past the farm, and my cottage is on the right. It's easy!
- J** OK. Got that. See you tomorrow afternoon!
- A** Bye. Safe journey. Oh, don't forget your surfboard!

T 10.11

J = Joel, A = Andy

- A** Look at you! What happened? Where's your car?
- J** I had a small problem ...
- A** What? How?
- J** Well, I did what you said. I drove down the hill, under the first bridge, and over the second bridge, then I drove along the road by the river, past the pub, and up the hill. Next I drove round the corner, but I saw some big cows in front of me. So I turned quickly, drove off the road through some apple trees, and into a lot of mud.
- A** Oh no! Are you all right?
- J** I'm fine. But now I can't move the car. Come and help me.
- A** Of course. But why didn't you just stop?
- J** Well, there were a lot of cows and they didn't look very friendly.
- A** But cows aren't dangerous.
- J** OK, OK! ... I still don't like the country very much ...

**UNIT 11****T 11.1**

Who's at the party?

O = Oliver, M = Monica

- O** Oh dear, Monica! I don't know any of these people. Who are they?
- M** Don't worry, Oliver. They're all very nice. Can you see that man over there? He's sitting down. That's Harry. He's a musician. He works in LA.
- O** Sorry, where?
- M** You know, LA. Los Angeles.
- O** Oh, yeah.
- M** And he's talking to Mandy. She's wearing a red dress. She's very nice and very rich! She lives in a beautiful old house in the country.
- O** Rich, eh?
- M** Yes. Rich and married! Next to her is Fiona. She's drinking a glass of red wine. Fiona's my oldest friend, she and I were at school together.
- O** And what does Fiona do?
- M** She's a writer. She writes children's stories – they're not very good but ... anyway, she's talking to George. He's laughing and smoking a cigar. He's a pilot. He travels the world, thousands of miles every week.
- O** And who are those two over there? They're dancing. Mmmm. They know each other very well.
- M** Oh, that's Roz and Sam. They're married. They live in the flat upstairs.
- O** So ... um ... that's Harry and Mandy and ... um ... it's no good, I can't remember all those names.

T 11.2

- 1 **A** Whose is the baseball cap?
B It's his.
- 2 **A** Whose are the boots?
B They're hers.
- 3 **A** Whose is the baby?
B It's theirs.

T 11.3

- 1 Who's on the phone?
- 2 I'm going to the pub. Who's coming?
- 3 Wow! Look at that sports car. Whose is it?
- 4 Whose dictionary is this? It's not mine.
- 5 There are books all over the floor. Whose are they?
- 6 Who's the most intelligent in our class?
- 7 Who's got my book?
- 8 Do you know whose jacket this is?

T 11.4

- A** Whose is this tennis racket?
- B** It's mine.
- A** What's it doing here?
- B** I'm playing tennis this afternoon.

T 11.5

- 1 **A** Whose are these football boots?
B They're John's. He's playing football later.
- 2 **A** Whose are these ballet shoes?
B They're Mary's. She's going dancing tonight.
- 3 **A** Whose is this suitcase?
B It's mine. I'm going on holiday tomorrow.
- 4 **A** Whose is this coat?
B It's Jane's. She's going for a walk soon.
- 5 **A** Whose is this plane ticket?
B It's Jo's. She's flying to Rome this afternoon.
- 6 **A** Whose are all these glasses?
B They're ours. We're having a party tonight.

T 11.6

Flying without wings

Everybody's looking for that something
One thing that makes it all complete
You find it in the strangest places
Places you never knew it could be

Some find it in the faces of their children
Some find it in their lover's eyes
Who can deny the joy it brings
When you find that special thing
You're flying without wings

Some find it sharing every morning
Some in their solitary lives
You find it in the words of others
A simple line can make you laugh or cry
You find it in the deepest friendship
The kind you cherish all your life
And when you know how much that means
You've found that special thing
You're flying without wings

So impossible as it may seem
You've got to fight for every dream
'Cause who's to know which one you let go
Would have made you complete

Well, for me it's waking up beside you
To watch the sunrise on your face
To know that I can say I love you
At any given time or place

It's little things that only I know
Those are the things that make you mine
And it's like flying without wings
'Cause you're my special thing
I'm flying without wings

You're the place my life begins
And you'll be where it ends
I'm flying without wings
And that's the joy you bring
I'm flying without wings

T 11.7 see p88

T 11.8

Vowels	Diphthongs
1 /e/ red said	1 /ai/ eyes size
2 /æ/ hat that	2 /iə/ near beer
3 /i/ list kissed	3 /eɪ/ grey pay
4 /i:/ green mean	4 /eə/ hair wear
5 /ɑ:/ park dark	5 /əʊ/ those nose
6 /u:/ whose shoes	6 /aʊ/ ours flowers
7 /ɔ:/ short bought	

T 11.9 see p88

T 11.10

- SA Can I help you?
 C Yes, please. I'm looking for a shirt to go with my new jeans.
 SA What colour are you looking for?
 C Blue.
 SA What about this one? Do you like this?
 C No, it isn't the right blue.
 SA Well, what about this one? It's a bit darker blue.
 C Oh yes. I like that one much better. Can I try it on?
 SA Yes, of course. The changing rooms are over there.
 ...
 Is the size OK?
 C No, it's a bit too big. Have you got a smaller size?
 SA That's the last blue one we've got, I'm afraid. But we've got it in green.
 C OK. I'll take the green. How much is it?
 SA £39.99. How do you want to pay?
 C Can I pay by credit card?
 SA Credit card's fine. Thank you very much.

Song: Teacher's Book p149



UNIT 12

T 12.1

Future plans

Jack

When I grow up I'm going to be a footballer – a really good one. I'm in the school team and I play three times a week. But I'm going to train very hard, every day, so I can be really, really good. First I'm going to play for Manchester United, then Inter Milan, and then Real Madrid. Those are my favourite teams. I'm going to travel all over the world and I'm going to be famous. I'm not going to marry until I'm very old – about 25. Then I want to have two sons. I'm going to play football until I'm 35 – that's a very long time. And I'm going to teach my sons to play. I want them to be famous footballers, too!

Danny Carrick

When I retire next year ... I'm going to retire early ... I'm not going to stay at home and watch TV. I'm going to try lots of new things. First I want to go mountain-climbing. In fact, I want to climb Mount Everest, so I'm going to train very hard for that. I'm going to learn to scuba-dive, too, because I want to go scuba-diving in Australia. There are so many things I want to do!

I'm going to travel all over the world, then I'm going to write a book about my adventures. I want to call it 'Life begins at 60!' In my book, I'm going to tell other retired people to try new things, too. You are only as old as you feel!

T 12.2 see p90

T 12.3

- A Why is he going to train very hard?
B Because he wants to be a footballer.
- A How long is he going to play football?
B Until he's 35.
- A When is he going to marry?
B Not until he's very old – about 25!
- A How many children is he going to have?
B Two.
- A Who is he going to teach to play?
B His sons.

T 12.4

- Take an umbrella. It's going to rain.
- Look at the time! You're going to be late for the meeting.
- Anna's running very fast. She's going to win the race.
- Look! Jack's on the wall. He's going to fall.
- Look at that man! He's going to jump.
- They're going to have a baby. It's due next month.
- There's my sister and her boyfriend! They're going to kiss.
- A Oh dear. I'm going to sneeze.
Aaattishooo!
B Bless you!

T 12.5 see p92

T 12.6

- A What's the weather like today?
 B It's snowy and it's very cold.
 A What was it like yesterday?
 B Oh, it was cold and cloudy.
 A What's it going to be like tomorrow?
 B I think it's going to be warmer.

T 12.7

- A It's a lovely day! What shall we do?
B Let's play tennis!
- A It's raining again! What shall we do?
B Let's stay at home and watch a DVD.

T 12.8

- A It's a lovely day! What shall we do?
B Let's play tennis!
A Oh no! It's too hot to play tennis.
B Well, let's go swimming.
A OK. I'll get my swimming costume.
- A It's raining again! What shall we do?
B Let's stay at home and watch a DVD.
A Oh no! We watched a DVD last night.
B Well, let's go to the cinema.
A OK. Which film do you want to see?



UNIT 13

T 13.1

Storytime quiz

- When did Shakespeare die?
b In the 17th century
- What happens at the end of *Romeo and Juliet*?
They both die. They kill themselves.
- How many dwarfs are there in *Snow White*?
b 7
- How much money do Hansel and Gretel's parents have?
c None
- How long does Sleeping Beauty sleep?
100 years
- Who does Cinderella marry?
a The handsome Prince
- Who created Mickey Mouse?
Walt Disney
- Where did Hans Christian Andersen come from?
b Denmark
- What nationality are Don Quixote and Sancho Panza?
Spanish
- Whose lamp is magic?
a Aladdin's
- Why does Pinocchio's nose grow long?
Because he tells lies
- What kind of animal is Walt Disney's Dumbo?
a an elephant
- Which city does Sherlock Holmes live in?
b London
- How old is Harry Potter in the first story *Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone*?
b 11

T 13.2 see p99

T 13.3

- A What's she wearing?
B Jeans.
A Is she wearing jeans?
B Yes, she is.
C No, she isn't.
- A Where does she work?
B In a bank.
A Does she work in a bank?
B Yes, she does.
C No, she doesn't.
- A When's he leaving?
B Tomorrow.
A Is he leaving tomorrow?
B Yes, he is.
C No, he isn't.
- A Who did you visit?
B My aunt.
A Did you visit your aunt?
B Yes, I did.
C No, I didn't.
- A How did you come?
B By taxi.
A Did you come by taxi?
B Yes, we did.
C No, we didn't.
- A Why are they going to have a party?
B Because it's her birthday. (sample answer)
A Are they going to have a party?
B Yes, they are.
C No, they aren't.

T 13.4

- A Where did you go?
 B To the shops.
 A When did you go?
 B This morning.
 A Who did you go with?
 B A friend from work.
 A How did you go?
 B We drove.
 A Whose car did you go in?
 B Joe's.
 A Why did you go?
 B To buy some new clothes.
 A What did you buy?
 B A new jacket.
 A How many did you buy?
 B Only one.
 A Which one did you buy?
 B The black leather one.
 A How much did you pay?
 B £180.99.

T 13.5

- 1 Why do you want to go?
 2 Who is she?
 3 Where's he staying?
 4 Why didn't they come?
 5 How old was she?
 6 Does he play the guitar?
 7 Where did you go at the weekend?

T 13.6**Noises in the night**

It was about two o'clock in the morning, and ... suddenly I woke up. I heard a noise. I got out of bed and went slowly downstairs. There was a light on in the living room. I listened carefully. I could hear two men speaking very quietly. 'Burglars!' I thought. 'Two burglars!' Immediately I ran back upstairs and phoned the police. I was really frightened. Fortunately the police arrived quickly. They opened the front door and went into the living room. Then they came upstairs to find me. 'It's all right now, sir,' they explained. 'We turned the television off for you!'

T 13.7 see p102**T 13.8** see p103**T 13.9** see p104**T 13.10**

- A Hello. Can I help you?
 B Yes, please. I'm not feeling very well. I'm looking for some aspirin. Where can I find them?
 A Right here. What size do you want? Small or large?
 B Large, please. And I'd like some shampoo, as well.
 A What kind of shampoo? For dry hair?
 B Normal hair?
 B Um ... for dry hair, please.
 A There's Sunsilk or Palmolive. Which one do you want?
 B Sunsilk's fine, thanks.
 A Anything else?
 B No, that's all. How much is that?
 A Four pounds twenty.

- B There you are.
 A Ten pounds. Thank you. And here's five pounds eighty change.
 B Thanks. Bye.
 A Bye-bye. Thank you very much.

**UNIT 14****T 14.1**

S = Steve, R = Ryan

- S Ryan, where are you and Tara going for your honeymoon?
 R Somewhere in Europe, we think. France, maybe, or Spain. I've been to Paris, but I haven't been to Barcelona.
 S Yes, Paris is beautiful. But what about Venice? It's very romantic.
 R Mmm, that's an idea. I've been to Italy, but I've never been to Venice.
 S What about Tara? Where does she want to go?
 R Oh, Tara doesn't mind where we go. She's been to Mexico and Brazil, but she hasn't been anywhere in Europe!

T 14.2 see p106**T 14.3** see p106**T 14.4****What has Ryan done?**

Yes, I've lived in a foreign country. In Japan, actually. I lived in Osaka for a year. I enjoyed it very much. I loved the food. And, yes, I have worked for a big company. I worked for Nissan, the car company, that's why I was in Japan. That was three years ago, then I got a job back in London.

Have I stayed in an expensive hotel? No, never – only cheap hotels for me, I'm afraid, but I have flown in a jumbo jet – lots of times, actually. Oh, I've never cooked a meal for a lot of people. I love food but I don't like cooking much. Sometimes I cook for me and my girlfriend Tara, but she likes it better if we go out for a meal! And I've never met a famous person – oh, just a minute, well not met, but I've seen ... er ... I saw a famous politician at the airport once – oh, who was it? I can't remember his name, um ... I've only seen one Shakespeare play, when I was at school, we saw *Romeo and Juliet*. It was OK. I've ridden a motorbike though. My brother's got one. It's very fast. Fortunately, I've never been to hospital. My brother has – he fell off his motorbike! Unfortunately, I've never won a competition. I do the lottery every week, but I've never, ever won a thing!

T 14.5**A honeymoon in Venice**

T = Tara, A = Amy

- T We're having a great time!
 A Tell me about it! What have you done so far?
 T Well, we've been to St Mark's Square. That was the first thing we did. It's right in the centre of Venice. We sat outside in the sun and had a coffee. We've seen the paintings in

the Doge's Palace. It was wonderful. But we haven't climbed up St Mark's Bell Tower yet. It was too busy. We're going early tomorrow morning.

- A Have you been in a gondola yet?
 T Oh yes, we have! We had a gondola trip yesterday evening. It was so romantic! And we've just had a fantastic boat ride along the Grand Canal and we went under the Rialto Bridge! But we haven't walked across it yet. I wanna do that.
 A Wow! You're busy! Have you visited the Murano glass factories yet? Don't forget – I want a glass horse!
 T I haven't forgotten. In fact, we took a boat to Murano island yesterday, and I got your horse. OK?
 A Oh, thank you, thank you! So what else are you going to do?
 T Well, I'd like to go to the beach, you know – at the Lido. It's so hot here! But we haven't really decided what else to do yet. There's so much to see.
 A Oh, you're so lucky! Have a lovely time. Give my love to Ryan!
 T Yeah. Bye, Amy. See you next week at the airport!

T 14.6**All around the world****Chorus**

I've been around the world and I
 I can't find my baby
 I don't know when, I don't know why
 Why he's gone away
 And I don't know where he can be, my baby
 But I'm gonna find him

We had a quarrel and I let myself go
 I said so many things, things he didn't know
 And I was oh so bad
 And I don't think he's coming back

He gave the reason, the reasons he should go
 And he said so many things he's never said before
 And he was oh so mad
 And I don't think he's coming, coming back
 I did too much lying, wasted too much time
 Now I'm here crying.

Chorus

So open-hearted, he never did me wrong
 I was the one, the weakest one of all
 And now I'm oh so sad
 And I don't think he's coming back, coming back
 I did too much lying, wasted too much time
 Now I'm here crying.

Chorus

I've been around the world looking for my baby
 Been around the world and I'm gonna
 I'm gonna find him

T 14.7

British Airways flight BA516 to Geneva boarding at gate 4, last call. Flight BA516 to Geneva, last call.

Scandinavian Airlines flight SK 832 to Frankfurt is delayed one hour. Flight SK 832 to Frankfurt, delayed one hour.

Air France flight 472 to Amsterdam is now boarding at gate 17. Flight AF 472 to Amsterdam, now boarding, gate 17.

Lufthansa flight 309 to Miami is now boarding at gate 32. Flight LH 309 to Miami, now boarding, gate 32.

Virgin Airlines flight to New York, VS 876 to New York. Please wait in the departure lounge until a further announcement. Thank you.

Passengers are reminded to keep their hand luggage with them at all times.

T 14.8

- 1 A Listen! ... BA 516 to Geneva. That's our flight.
B Did the announcement say gate 4 or 14?
A I couldn't hear. I think it said 4.
B Look! There it is on the departure board
It is gate 4.
A OK. Come on! Let's go.
- 2 A Can I have your ticket, please?
B Yes, of course.
A Thank you. How many suitcases have you got?
B Just one.
A And have you got much hand luggage?
B Just this bag.
A That's fine.
B Oh ... can I have a seat next to the window?
A Yes, that's OK. Here's your boarding pass. Have a nice flight!
- 3 A Ryan! Tara! Over here!
B Hi! Amy! Great to see you!
A It's great to see you too. You look terrific! Did you have a good honeymoon?
B Fantastic. Everything was fantastic.
A Well, you haven't missed anything here. Nothing much has happened at all!
- 4 A There's my flight. It's time to go.
B Oh no! It's been a wonderful two weeks. I can't believe it's over.
A I know. When can we see each other again?
B Soon, I hope. I'll email every day.
A I'll phone too. Goodbye, my darling. Give my love to your family.
B Goodbye, Lukas.

Song: Teacher's Book p153

Grammar Reference



UNIT 1

1.1 Verb to be

Positive

I	am	from the USA.
He She It	is	
We You They	are	

I'm = I am

He's = He is
She's = She is
It's = It is

We're = We are
You're = You are
They're = They are

Question

Where	am	I	from?
	is	he she it	
	are	we you they	

I'm 20

I'm 20. NOT I'm 20 years.
I'm 20 years old. I have 20 years.

1.2 Possessive adjectives

What's	my your his her its	name?
This is	our your their	house.

What's = What is

1.3 Question words

What is your phone number?

Where are you from?

How are you?

1.4 a/an

It's a	ticket. newspaper. magazine.
--------	------------------------------------

It's an	apple. envelope. English dictionary.
---------	--

We use *an* before a vowel.

I'm a doctor. NOT I'm doctor.
I'm a student. I'm student.

1.5 Plural nouns

- Most nouns add *-s* in the plural.
stamps keys cameras
- If the noun ends in *-s*, *-ss*, *-sh*, or *-ch*, add *-es*.
bus → buses class → classes wish → wishes
match → matches
- If the noun ends in a consonant + *-y*, the *-y* changes to *-ies*.
country countries party parties
But if the noun ends in a vowel + *-y*, the *-y* doesn't change.
key keys day days
- Some nouns are irregular. Dictionaries show this.
child children person people
woman women man men

1.6 Numbers 1-20

1 one	6 six	11 eleven	16 sixteen
2 two	7 seven	12 twelve	17 seventeen
3 three	8 eight	13 thirteen	18 eighteen
4 four	9 nine	14 fourteen	19 nineteen
5 five	10 ten	15 fifteen	20 twenty

1.7 Prepositions

Where are you **from**?

I live **in** a house **in** Fortaleza.

What's this **in** English?

EXERCISES

1 Complete the sentences. Use *am*, *is*, or *are*.

- How _____ you?
- I _____ fine, thanks.
- Patrick _____ my brother.
- We _____ both 23 years old.
- Katy and Paul _____ married.

2 Complete the conversation. Use *my*, *your*, *her*, or *his*.

Ann Hi, (1) _____ name's Ann. What's (2) _____ name?

Nick Hi! (3) _____ name's Nick. This is my sister. (4) _____ name's Maria.

Ann Hi. This is my brother. (5) _____ name is Tom.

3 Choose the correct question word.

- How / What is your name?
- What / How are you?
- What / Where are you from?

4 Complete the sentences. Use *a* or *an*.

- It's _____ stamp.
- He's _____ teacher.
- It's _____ apple.
- I'm _____ student.
- It's _____ orange.

5 Write the plural form.

- dictionary _____
- student _____
- orange _____
- child _____
- day _____



UNIT 2

2.1 Verb to be

Questions with question words

What	is her surname? is his job? is her address?
Where	is she are you are they
Who	is Lara? is she?
How old	is he? are you?
How much	is an ice-cream?

Answers

Jefferson.
He's a policeman.
34, Church Street.

Mexico.

She's Patrick's daughter.

Twenty-two.

One pound 50p.

Yes/No questions

Is	he she it	young?
Are	you they	married?

Short answers

Yes, he is.
No, she isn't.
Yes, it is.

No, I'm not./No, we aren't.
Yes, they are./No, they aren't.

Negative

I	'm not	
He She It	isn't	
We You They	aren't	

I'm not = I am not (~~I amn't~~)

He isn't = He is not
She isn't = She is not
It isn't = It is not

We aren't = We are not
You aren't = You are not
They aren't = They are not

2.2 Possessive 's

My wife's name is Judy. That's Andrea's dictionary.

2.3 Numbers 21-100

21 twenty-one	30 thirty
22 twenty-two	31 thirty-one
23 twenty-three	40 forty
24 twenty-four	50 fifty
25 twenty-five	60 sixty
26 twenty-six	70 seventy
27 twenty-seven	80 eighty
28 twenty-eight	90 ninety
29 twenty-nine	100 one hundred

2.4 Prepositions

This is a photo of my family.

It's good practice for you.

I'm at home. My mother and father are at work.

I'm at The Embassy Language School.

I'm in Brighton. I'm in a class with eight students.

I live with an English family in an old house.

EXERCISES

1 Complete the questions. Use *What, Where, Who, How much, or How old*.

- _____ are you? I'm 22.
- _____ is Nick? He's at home.
- _____ is this? It's £40.
- _____ is your job? I'm a teacher.
- _____ is that? It's Alex.

2 Make questions and negative sentences.

- you / are / cold / ? _____
- we / speak / English / don't _____
- cafés / they / do / like / ? _____
- I'm / from / Italy / not _____
- does / play / she / tennis / ? _____

3 Rewrite the sentences. Use the possessive 's.

- Jane + book Jane's book
- my friend + bag _____
- my family + house _____
- John + son _____
- Andrea + brother _____
- his wife + name _____

4 Match the numbers.

1 fifteen	a 11
2 twenty	b 12
3 thirteen	c 20
4 eleven	d 13
5 twelve	e 15



UNIT 3

3.1 Present Simple *he, she, it*

- The Present Simple expresses a fact which is always true, or true for a long time.

He **comes** from Switzerland. She **works** in a bank.

- It also expresses a habit.

She goes skiing in winter. He never **has** a holiday.

Positive

He She It	lives	in Australia.
-----------------	-------	---------------

Have is irregular.
She **has** a dog.
NOT she **haves**

Negative

He She It	doesn't live	in France.
-----------------	--------------	------------

doesn't = does not

Question

Where does	he she it	live?
------------	-----------------	-------

Yes/No questions

Does	he she it	live	in Australia? in France?
------	-----------------	------	-----------------------------

Short answers

Yes, he does.
No, she doesn't.
Yes, it does.

3.2 Spelling of the third person singular

- Most verbs add *-s* in the third person singular.
wear → wears speak → speaks live → lives
But *go* and *do* are different. They add *-es*.
go → goes do → does
- If the verb ends in *-s*, *-sh*, or *-ch*, add *-es*.
finish → finishes watch → watches
- If the verb ends in a consonant + *-y*, the *-y* changes to *-ies*.
fly → flies study → studies
But if the verb ends in a vowel + *-y* the *-y* does not change.
play → plays
- Have* is irregular.
have → has

3.3 Prepositions

She lives **in** Kenya.
He plays tennis **in** his free time.
A nurse looks **after** people **in** hospital.
He lives **on** an island **in** the west of Scotland.
He collects the post **from** the boat.
He drives the children **to** school.
Tourists come **by** boat.
It's **about** 6.30.

EXERCISES

1 Write the third person singular form of the verbs.

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1 do _____ | 4 speak _____ |
| 2 watch _____ | 5 have _____ |
| 3 listen _____ | 6 walk _____ |

2 Change the sentences from positive to negative.

- Olivier comes from Belgium. _____
- Sandra works in a school. _____
- Bill speaks Japanese. _____
- My sister has two children. _____
- Lucy goes to Greece every year. _____
- Peter studies art at college. _____

3 Make questions.

- study / Harry / German / at school / does / ?

- does / she / live / where / ?

- does / come / this stamp / where / from / ?

- sports / does / enjoy / she / what / ?

- Guy / got / has / dog / a / ?

4 Complete the sentences. Use the Present Simple.

- _____ he _____ in Greece? (live)
- You _____ in a bank. (not work)
- I _____ TV in the evenings. (watch)
- Marta _____ a new boyfriend. (have)
- I _____ Spanish. (not speak)
- _____ Carlo _____ English? (study)



UNIT 4

4.1 Present Simple

Positive

I	start	at 6.30.
You		
We		
They		
He	starts	
She		
It		

Negative

I	don't	start	at 6.30.
You			
We			
They			
He	doesn't		
She			
It			

Question

When	do	I you we they	start?
	does	he she it	

Yes/No questions

Do	you they	have	a camera?
Does	he she it	like	Chinese food?

Short answers

No, I don't./No, we don't.
Yes, they do.
Yes, he does.
No, she doesn't.
Yes, it does.

4.2 Adverbs of frequency

0%	50%	100%		
never	sometimes	often	usually	always

- These adverbs usually come before the main verb.
She **never** eats meat.
I **sometimes** play tennis on Saturdays.
I **don't often** go swimming.
I **usually** go to bed at about 11.00.
We **always** have wine in the evenings.
- Sometimes* and *usually* can also come at the beginning or the end of a sentence.
Sometimes we play cards. We play cards **sometimes**.
Usually I walk to school. I walk to school **usually**.
- Never* and *always* can't come at the beginning or the end of a sentence.
NOT ~~Never I go to the theatre.~~
~~Always I have tea in the morning.~~

4.3 like/love + verb + -ing

When *like* and *love* are followed by a verb, it is usually verb + *-ing*.
I **like** cooking. She **loves** listening to music.

4.4 Prepositions

She gets up early **on** weekdays.
She goes to the gym **on** Friday mornings.
They never go out **on** Saturday evenings.
Do you relax at weekends?
She gets up **at** six o'clock.
She gets up early **in** the morning.
We go out **in** the evening.
She goes surfing **in** summer.

EXERCISES

1 Complete the sentences. Use the positive form of the verbs in the box.

play go live work speak

- My best friend _____ in Italy.
- John and Kate _____ French and German.
- Nadia often _____ running before breakfast.
- I _____ six days a week.
- My brother _____ the piano.

2 Make questions and short answers. Use the Present Simple.

- he / like / swimming?

No, _____.

- you / have / a computer?

Yes, _____.

- they / live / in Paris?

Yes, _____.

- she / start / at 9.00?

No, _____.

- we / speak / English?

Yes, _____.

3 Put the adverb in the correct place.

- George walks to work. (always) _____
- Sandra watches TV. (never) _____
- You don't go running. (often) _____

4 Find and correct two incorrect sentences.

- Vicky loves listen to the radio. _____
- My sister likes going shopping. _____
- They love reading. _____
- David likes to cooking. _____



UNIT 5

5.1 There is/are

Positive

There	is	a sofa.	(singular)
	are	two books.	(plural)

Negative

There	isn't	an armchair.	(singular)
	aren't	any flowers.	(plural)

Yes/No questions

Is	there	a table?
Are		any photos?

Short answers

Yes, there is.
No, there isn't.
Yes, there are.
No, there aren't.

5.2 How many ... ?

How many books do you have?

5.3 some/any

Positive

There are some flowers. *some* + plural noun

Negative

There aren't any cups. *any* + plural noun

Question

Are there any books? *any* + plural noun

5.4 this, that, these, those

We use *this/these* to talk about people/things that are near to us.

I like **this** ice-cream.

I want **these** shoes.

We use *that/those* to talk about people/things that aren't near to us.

Do you like **that** picture on the wall?

Who are **those** children outside?

5.5 Prepositions

He lives **in** the south of France.

There is a photo **on** the television.

There are two pictures **on** the wall.

The cinema is **on** the left, **opposite** the flower shop.

The bank is **next to** the supermarket.

The bus stop is **near** the park.

There is a post box **in front of** the post office.

There are magazines **under** the table.

EXERCISES

1 Match the two halves of the sentences.

1 Is there	a any boys?
2 There are	b a computer.
3 Are there	c a letter?
4 There isn't	d two girls.

2 Make sentences. Use the verb *be* (+, -, or ?).

- (?) _____ there any books?
- (-) There _____ any champagne.
- (+) There _____ five glasses.
- (?) _____ there a dictionary?
- (-) There _____ any magazines.
- (+) There _____ a black dog.

3 Complete the sentences. Use *some, any, or many*.

- How _____ apples are there?
- There are _____ photos.
- Are there _____ glasses?
- There are _____ biscuits.
- How _____ sandwiches do you want?

4 Choose the correct word.

- I like this / these clock.
- Do you want those / that books?
- These / this flowers are beautiful!
- Where is that / those café?

UNIT 6

6.1 can/can't

Can and *can't* have the same form in all persons.
There is no *do* or *does*.
Can is followed by the infinitive (without *to*).

could/couldn't

Could is the past of *can*.
Could and *couldn't* have the same form in all persons.
Could is followed by the infinitive (without *to*).

Positive

I	can	swim.
He/She/It	could	
We		
You		
They		

Negative

I	can't	dance.
He/She/It	couldn't	
We		
You		
They		

NOT He ~~doesn't~~ can dance.

Question

What	can	I	do?
	could	you	
		he/she/it	
		we	
		they	

Yes/No questions

Can	you	drive?
Could	she	cook?
	they	

Short answers

No, I can't./No, we couldn't.
Yes, she can/could.
Yes, they can/could.

NOT ~~Do you can~~ drive?

6.2 was/were

Was/were is the past of *am/is/are*.

Positive

I	was	
He/She/It		in Paris yesterday.
We	were	in England last year.
You		
They		

Negative

I	wasn't	
He/She/It		at school yesterday.
We	weren't	at the party last night.
You		
They		

Question

Where	was	I? he/she/it?
	were	we/you/they?

Yes/No questions

Was	he	at work?
	she	at home?
Were	you	
	they	

Short answers

No, he wasn't.
Yes, she was.
Yes, I was./Yes, we were.
No, they weren't.

was born

Where	was	she	born?
	were	he	
		you	
		they	

I was born in Manchester in 1980.

NOT I ~~am born~~ in 1980.

6.3 Prepositions

I was **at** a party.
Yesterday there was a party **at** my house.
Can I speak **to** you?
He sits **at** his computer **for** hours.

EXERCISES

1 Correct the sentences.

- Tanya can sing, but she couldn't dance.
- Mark could to swim two years ago, but he couldn't ride a bicycle.
- Do you can play tennis?
- What I can do today?

2 Write sentences that are true for you. Use *can/can't* or *could/couldn't*.

- I _____ play an instrument.
- I _____ use a computer.
- I _____ fly a plane.
- I _____ cook.
- I _____ ride a bike when I was six.
- I _____ swim when I was two.
- I _____ speak two languages when I was eight.
- I _____ speak my language when I was four.

3 Rewrite the sentences in the past. Use *was* or *were*.

- I'm in London. _____
- They are at a party. _____
- Where are you? _____
- You aren't at school. _____
- She's at home. _____
- Are they in the restaurant? _____
- Where's David? _____
- We aren't at work. _____

UNIT 7

7.1 Past Simple – spelling of regular verbs

- The normal rule is to add *-ed*.
worked started
If the verb ends in *-e*, add *-d*.
lived loved
- If the verb has only one syllable and one vowel and one consonant, double the consonant.
stopped planned
- Verbs that end in a consonant + *-y* change to *-ied*.
studied carried

7.2 Past Simple

The Past Simple expresses a past action that is finished.

I **lived** in Rome when I was six.

She **started** work when she was eight.

The form of the Past Simple is the same in all persons.

Positive

I		
He/She/It	moved	to London in 1985.
We	went	
You		
They		

Negative

We use *didn't* + infinitive (without *to*) in all persons.

I			
He/She/It	didn't	move	to London.
We		go	
You			
They			

Question

We use *did* + infinitive (without *to*) in all persons.

When	did	I	go?
Where		you	
		he/she/it	
		we/they	

Yes/No questions

Did	you	like	the film?
	she	enjoy	the party?
	they		
	etc.		

Short answers

No, I didn't.
No, we didn't.
Yes, she did.
No, they didn't.

There is list of irregular verbs on the inside back cover.

7.3 Time expressions

last	night	month
	week	year
	Saturday	

yesterday	morning
	afternoon
	evening

7.4 Prepositions

She travelled **around** the world.

She acted **in** over 50 films.

She worked **for** 20th Century Fox.

She went **to** school when she was 12.

She flew **across** the Atlantic.

Are you interested **in** modern art?

EXERCISES

1 Complete the sentences. Use the Past Simple.

- I _____ playing football at 5 p.m. (stop)
- She _____ in a café last summer. (work)
- You _____ John last week. (not see)
- _____ they _____ to university? (go)
- Sarah _____ in New York in 2002. (live)
- When _____ he _____? (arrive)
- Peter _____ to travel round Europe. (decide)
- Luke _____ two dogs and a cat. (have)
- When _____ the film _____? (finish)
- They _____ a holiday in India. (want)

2 Put the time expressions in the correct column.

morning	night	afternoon	year	evening	week
last		yesterday			

3 Write the Past Simple of the verbs.

- walk _____
- go _____
- see _____
- eat _____
- become _____
- write _____
- study _____
- run _____
- sing _____
- hear _____

4 Write short answers that are true for you.

- Did you watch TV last week? _____
- Did you and your friends go out last weekend? _____
- Did your father teach you to ride a bike? _____
- Did your parents travel abroad when you were a child? _____

UNIT 8

8.1 Past Simple

Negative

Negatives in the Past Simple are the same in all persons.

I/He/She	didn't	go out	last night.
We/You/They		see Tom	

ago

I went to the USA	ten years / two weeks / a month	ago.
-------------------	---------------------------------	------

8.2 Time expressions

in	the twentieth century / 1924 / the 1990s winter / summer / the evening / morning / September
on	10 October / Christmas Day / Saturday / Sunday evening
at	seven o'clock / weekends / night

8.3 Prepositions

He started **in** the 1820s.

Only US cars had windscreen wipers **by** 1916.

I tried to forget **about** him.

People didn't hear **about** his invention.

People laughed **at** her idea.

I fell **in** love **with** him.

They lived **by** the lake.

EXERCISES

1 Make sentences.

1 Sue / yesterday / to the cinema / went

2 ago / I / met / Nick / two years

3 last night / go / they / out / didn't

4 three weeks / Jack / ago / was born

5 Friday / we / last / met

2 Rewrite the sentences. Use the negative form of the Past Simple.

1 I watched TV last night. _____

2 They travelled by train. _____

3 Mary sang in the concert last week. _____

4 Pete saw three men outside the bank. _____

5 We went to New York in 2002. _____

3 Complete the sentences. Use the Past Simple.

1 Nick _____ off his bike. (fall)

2 I _____ them an email. (send)

3 You _____ my glasses! (find)

4 She _____ a cup of coffee. (drink)

5 We _____ a new DVD. (buy)

4 Choose the correct preposition.

1 They met on / at / in 11 June.

2 Kate was born in / at / on the 1980s.

3 We play tennis on / in / at weekends.

4 She bought the flat at / on / in May.

5 What did you do in / at / on Monday?



UNIT 9

9.1 Count and uncount nouns

Some nouns are countable.

a book → two books an egg → six eggs

Some nouns are uncountable.

bread rice

Some nouns are both!

Do you like ice-cream? We'd like three ice-creams, please.

9.2 would like

Would is the same in all persons.

We use *would like* in offers and requests.

Positive

I		
You		
He/She/It	'd like	a drink.
We		
They		

'd = would

Yes/No questions

Would	you	like a biscuit?
	he/she/it	
	they	

Short answers

Yes, please.
No, thank you.

9.3 some and any

We use *some* in positive sentences with uncount nouns and plural nouns.

There is	some	bread	on the table.
There are		oranges	

We use *some* in questions when we ask for things and offer things.

Can I have	some	coffee, please?
Would you like		grapes?

We use *any* in questions and negative sentences with uncount nouns and plural nouns.

Is there	any	water?
Does she have		children?
I can't see		rice.
There aren't		people.

(I don't know if there is any water / if she has any children.)

9.4 How much ... ? and How many ... ?

We use *How much* ... ? with uncount nouns.

How much rice is there? There isn't much rice.

We use *How many* ... ? with count nouns.

How many apples are there? There aren't many apples.

9.5 Prepositions

I've got a book by John Grisham.

What do you have for breakfast?

Germany has many kinds of sausages.

EXERCISES

1 Write C (countable) or U (uncountable).

- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| 1 milk _____ | 5 apple _____ |
| 2 money _____ | 6 bread _____ |
| 3 homework _____ | 7 fruit _____ |
| 4 CD _____ | 8 tea _____ |

2 Complete the sentences. Use *Would ... like* or *'d like*.

- I _____ a cup of coffee, please.
- _____ they _____ some food?
- _____ you _____ to go out tonight?
- _____ she _____ a drink?

3 Choose the correct word.

- Can I have any / some milk, please?
- Do they have some / any sandwiches?
- There are some / any oranges.
- Would you like any / some coffee?
- Are there any / some biscuits?

4 Complete the sentences. Use *is*, *are*, *some*, *any*, *much*, or *many*.

- How _____ sugar is there?
- I'd like _____ water, please.
- _____ there any bread?
- How _____ people did you see?
- There _____ some letters for you.
- Have you got _____ money?



UNIT 10

10.1 Comparative and superlative adjectives

	Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
One-syllable adjectives	old safe big hot	older safer bigger* hotter*	the oldest the safest the biggest* the hottest*
Adjectives ending in -y	noisy dirty	noisier dirtier	the noisiest the dirtiest
Two or more syllable adjectives	boring beautiful	more boring more beautiful	the most boring the most beautiful
Irregular adjectives	good bad far	better worse further	the best the worst the furthest

* Adjectives which end in one vowel and one consonant double the consonant.

You're **older** than me.

New York is **dirtier** than Paris.

Prague is one of **the most beautiful** cities in Europe.

10.2 *have got* and *have*

Have got means the same as *have* to talk about possession, but the form is very different. We often use *have got* in spoken English.

have got

Positive

I	have	got	a cat. a garden.
You			
We			
They			
He	has		
She			
It			

Negative

I	haven't	got	a dog. a garage.
You			
We			
They			
He	hasn't		
She			
It			

Questions

Have	I you we they	got	any money? a sister?
Has	he she it		

How many children **have they got**?

Short answers

Yes, I have./No, I haven't.

Yes, she has./No, she hasn't.

The past of both *have* and *have got* is *had*.

have

Positive

I	have	a cat. a garden.
You		
We		
They		
He	has	
She		
It		

Negative

I	don't	have	a dog. a garage.
You			
We			
They			
He	doesn't		
She			
It			

Questions

Do	I you we they	have	any money? a sister?
Does	he she it		

How many children **do they have**?

Short answers

Yes, I do./No, I don't.

Yes, she does./No, she doesn't.

10.3 Prepositions

The country is quieter **than** the city.

The house is 50 metres **from** the sea.

Everest is the highest mountain **in** the world.

He spends his time **on** the banks of the river.

He drove **along** the road.

He drove **round** the corner.

They ran **over** the bridge.

I walked **past** the pub.

He walked **up** the hill.

He ran **down** the hill.

The cat ran **through** the house.

He jumped **into** the lake.

EXERCISES

1 Write the comparative and superlative form.

- easy _____ → _____
- boring _____ → _____
- far _____ → _____
- noisy _____ → _____
- nice _____ → _____

2 Tick the correct sentence in each pair.

- ☐ My computer's bigger than yours.
☐ My computer is more big than yours.
- ☐ This is the noisiest city I know!
☐ This is the noisier city I know!
- ☐ It's the worse film in the world.
☐ It's the worst film in the world.
- ☐ Seville is hotter than London.
☐ Seville is hotter than London.
- ☐ Museums are boringer than parks.
☐ Museums are more boring than parks.

3 Make sentences. Use *have got* (+, -, or ?).

- (+) I / a brother _____
- (?) you / a pet _____
- (-) they / a car _____
- (?) we / any money _____
- (-) he / a computer _____
- (+) it / a cinema _____

UNIT 11

11.1 Present Continuous

- The Present Continuous describes an activity that is happening now.
She's **wearing** jeans.
I'm **studying** English.
- It also describes an activity in the near future.
I'm **playing** tennis this afternoon.
Jane's **seeing** her boyfriend tonight.

Positive and negative

I	am	(not) going	outside.
He She It	is		
We You They	are		

Question

Where	am	I	going?
	is	he she it	
	are	we you they	

Yes/No questions

Are you having a good time?
Is my English getting better?
Are they having a party?

Short answers

Yes, we are.
Yes, it is.
No, they aren't.

Spelling of verb + -ing

- Most verbs just add **-ing**.
wear → **wearing** go → **going** cook → **cooking**
- If the infinitive ends in **-e**, drop the **-e**.
write → **writing** smile → **smiling**
- When a one-syllable verb has one vowel and ends in a consonant, double the consonant.
sit → **sitting** get → **getting** run → **running**

11.2 Present Simple and Present Continuous

- The Present Simple describes things that are always true, or true for a long time.
I **come** from Switzerland.
He **works** in a bank.
- The Present Continuous describes activities happening now, and temporary activities.
Why **are you wearing** a suit? You usually wear jeans.

11.3 Whose + possessive pronouns

Whose ... ? asks about possession.

Subject	Object	Adjective	Pronoun
I	me	my	mine
You	you	your	yours
He	him	his	his
She	her	her	hers
We	us	our	ours
They	them	their	theirs

Whose is this book? Whose book is this? Whose is it?	It's	mine. yours. hers. his. ours. theirs.
--	------	--

11.4 Prepositions

We've got this jumper **in** red.
He's talking **to** Mandy.
There's a girl **with** fair hair.
I'm looking **for** a jumper.
I always pay **by** credit card.

EXERCISES

1 Complete the sentences. Use the Present Continuous.

- He _____ maths at university. (study)
- I _____ away this weekend. (not go)
- _____ they _____ ? (work)
- She _____ the party. (not enjoy)
- _____ you _____ Sam tonight? (see)

2 Write the -ing form.

- write _____
- stop _____
- travel _____
- go _____
- dance _____

3 Complete the sentences. Use *Whose* or *Who's*.

- _____ books are these?
- _____ standing at the door?
- _____ going to pass the exam?
- _____ is this pen?
- _____ dog is that?

4 Complete the sentences. Use the Present Simple or Continuous.

- Juan _____ from Barcelona. (come)
- I _____ Jo at 6 p.m. tonight. (meet)
- Why _____ you _____ now? (laugh)
- She always _____ nice clothes. (wear)
- We're late! _____ you _____ ? (come)



UNIT 12

12.1 going to

- 1 *Going to* expresses a person's plans and intentions.
She's **going to be** a ballet dancer when she grows up.
We're **going to stay** in a villa in France this summer.
- 2 Often there is no difference between *going to* and the Present Continuous to refer to a future intention.
I'm **seeing** Peter tonight.
I'm **going to see** Peter tonight.
- 3 We also use *going to* when we can see now that something is sure to happen in the future.
Careful! That glass is **going to fall**!

Positive and negative

I	am	(not) going to	have a break. stay at home.
He/She/It	is		
We/You/They	are		

Questions

When	am	I	going to	have a break? stay at home?
	is	he/she/it		
	are	we/you/they		

With the verbs *to go* and *to come*, we usually use the Present Continuous for future plans.

We're **going to** Paris next week.
Joe and Tim **are coming** for lunch tomorrow.

12.2 Infinitive of purpose

- The infinitive can express why a person does something.
I'm saving my money **to buy** a CD player.
(= I want to buy a CD player)
We're going to Paris **to have** a holiday.
(= we want to have a holiday)
NOT
I'm saving my money ~~for to buy~~ a CD player.
I'm saving my money ~~for buy~~ a CD player.

12.3 Prepositions

What did he do **as** a child? What's **on** TV tonight?
He grew up **in** the city. What's **on at** the cinema?
I'm going to Florida **in** a year's time.

EXERCISES

- 1 Complete the sentences. Use *going to* (+, -, or ?).
1 (+) Look! It _____ be a lovely day!
2 (?) _____ Bill _____ see Dan tonight?
3 (-) I _____ study this weekend.
4 (+) Be careful! You _____ fall.
5 (-) We _____ play football today.
6 (?) _____ you _____ cook dinner tonight?
7 (+) He _____ pass the exam.
8 (-) I _____ work tomorrow.
9 (?) _____ they _____ stay with us?

2 Rewrite the sentences. Use an infinitive of purpose.

- 1 I'm going out because I want to walk the dog.

- 2 They're saving money because they want to buy a flat.

- 3 She's going to the bank because she wants to get some cash.

- 4 Nick is running because he wants to get fit.

- 5 You are studying because you want to learn English.

- 6 I'm going to the chemist's because I want to buy aspirin.



UNIT 13

13.1 Question forms

When did Shakespeare live?
Where did Hans Christian Andersen come from?
Who did she marry?
Who created Mickey Mouse?
How do you get to school?
What do you have for breakfast?
What happens at the end of the story?
Why do you want to learn English?
How many people are there in the class?
How much does she earn?
How far is it to the centre?
What sort of car do you have?
Which newspaper do you read?

13.2 Adjectives and adverbs

Adjectives describe nouns.
a **big** dog a **careful** driver
Adverbs describe verbs.
She ran **quickly**. He drives too **fast**.

To form regular adverbs, add *-ly* to the adjective.
Words ending in *-y* change to *-ily*.

Adjective	Adverb
quick	quickly
bad	badly
careful	carefully
immediate	immediately
easy	easily

Some adverbs are irregular.

Adjective	Adverb
good	well
hard	hard
early	early
fast	fast

13.3 Prepositions

What's the story **about**?
What happens **at** the end of the story?

EXERCISES

1 Complete the sentences. Use a suitable question word.

- 1 _____ many children have you got?
- 2 _____ does Gianni come from?
- 3 _____ are you doing?
- 4 _____ does the class start?
- 5 _____ much time have we got?

2 Correct the sentences.

- 1 Who Sally married? _____
- 2 What does happen at the start of the film? _____
- 3 Which town you live in? _____
- 4 How far it is to the town hall? _____
- 5 Why you want to buy that CD? _____

3 Change the adjectives into adverbs.

- 1 good _____ 4 fast _____
- 2 hard _____ 5 careful _____
- 3 immediate _____

4 Choose the correct adjective.

- 1 This film is very bored / boring.
- 2 I was amazed / amazing when I saw it.
- 3 Pete was boring / bored, so he went home.
- 4 This article is very interesting / interested.
- 5 She's frightening / frightened of dogs.

Question

Where	have	I you we they	been?
	has	she he it	

Yes/No questions
Have you been to Russia?
Short answers
Yes, I have./No, I haven't.

ever and never

We use *ever* in questions and *never* in negative sentences.
Have you ever been to Russia? I've never been to Russia.

14.2 yet and just

We use *just* in positive sentences. We use *yet* in negative sentences and questions.

Have you done your homework yet?
I haven't done it yet (but I'm going to).
I have just done it (a short time before now).

14.3 Prepositions

She works **for** a big company.
Ryan and Tara are **on** honeymoon.
Hamlet is a play **by** Shakespeare.

EXERCISES

1 Tick the correct sentence in each pair.

- 1 ☐ I went to Finland last year.
☐ I have been to Finland last year.
- 2 ☐ Have you ever met a famous person?
☐ Did you ever meet a famous person?
- 3 ☐ Kate's not here. She went to Paris.
☐ Kate's not here. She's gone to Paris.
- 4 ☐ You have met him when you were six.
☐ You met him when you were six.

2 Complete the sentences. Use the Present Perfect (+, -, or ?).

- 1 (+) He _____ all over the world. (travel)
- 2 (?) _____ you ever _____ this film? (see)
- 3 (-) We _____ on holiday this year. (be)
- 4 (+) They _____ your letter. (read)
- 5 (?) _____ Bill _____ the shopping? (do)
- 6 (-) We _____ the card yet. (send)

3 Put the adverb in the correct place.

- 1 Have you finished the report? (yet) _____
- 2 I've been to Australia. (never) _____
- 3 Tom has called. (just) _____
- 4 Has Tony lived in London? (ever) _____

4 Write short answers that are true for you.

- 1 Have you ever been to Manchester? _____
- 2 Have you taken any exams this year? _____
- 3 Have any of your friends ever played in a rock band? _____
- 4 Has your best friend ever lied to you? _____
- 5 Has the lesson finished yet? _____

UNIT 14

14.1 Present Perfect

- 1 The Present Perfect refers to an action that happened some time before now.

She's travelled to most parts of the world.
Have you ever been in a car accident?

- 2 If we want to say *when* these actions happened, we must use the Past Simple.

She went to Russia two years ago.
I was in a crash when I was 10.

- 3 Notice the time expressions used with the Past Simple.

I left last night/yesterday/in 1990/at three o'clock/on Monday.

Positive and negative

I You We They	have	(not) been	to the States.
He She It	has		

I've been = I have been
You've been = You have been
We've been = We have been
They've been = They have been

He's been = He has been
She's been = She has been
It's been = It has been

been and gone

She's gone to Portugal. (= she's there now)
She's been to Portugal. (= now she has returned)

Pairwork activities Student A

UNIT 5 p37 What's in your picture?

This picture of a living room is not complete. Ask Student B questions to find out where the things in the box go. Draw them in the correct place.

Where's the lamp?

It's on the table.

Where exactly?

Next to the book.

lamp magazines photos plants clock rug



UNIT 6 p50 On the phone

1 You are the operator. Ask questions to find out who your partner wants to phone. Start: *International Directory Enquiries. Which country, please?*

Country	
Town	
Last name	
Initial	
Address	

Finish: *The number you require is 75 842 2209*

2 You want to call Fernando. Answer Student B's questions to get Fernando's telephone number.

Travel 
Peru

Fernando Diaz
Tourist guide

Jiron Junin 612
Lima PERU

Tel:

email: flmdiaz@travel.co.pe

UNIT 8 p60 Famous inventions

When were things invented? With a partner, ask and answer questions.

When was Coca-Cola invented?

In 1886.

That's ... years ago.

- 1 Coca-Cola was invented in _____.
- 2 The camera was invented in 1826.
- 3 The record player was invented in _____.
- 4 The first plane was invented in 1903.
- 5 Jeans were invented in _____.
- 6 Hamburgers were invented in 1895.
- 7 Cars were invented in _____.
- 8 The telephone was invented in 1876.
- 9 The television was invented in _____.
- 10 Bicycles were invented in about 1840.

UNIT 8 p62 Did you know that?

With a partner, make similar conversations.

- A Did you know that Marco Polo brought spaghetti back from China?
 B Really? He didn't! That's incredible!
 A Well, it's true.
 B Did you know that Napoleon was afraid of cats?
 A He wasn't! I don't believe it!
 B Well, it's true!

Did you know that ...

- ... Vincent van Gogh sold only two of his paintings while he was alive?
- ... the actress Shirley Temple was a millionaire before she was ten?
- ... Shakespeare spelled his name in eleven different ways?
- ... in 1979 it snowed in the Sahara desert?
- ... King Louis XIV of France had a bath only three times in his life?

UNIT 10 p76 I've got more than you!

Work with a partner. You are both famous film stars. Ask and answer questions to find out who is richer!

I've got five boats.
 How many have you got?

Twelve. I've got this one, four in the Mediterranean, two in the South Pacific, two in the Caribbean, and three in Asia.

Well, I've got thirty cars!

That's nothing! I've got ...

5 boats	8 gold watches	4 houses
50 cars	80 gold and diamond rings	150 million dollars
100 Arab horses	25 servants	

UNIT 11 p84 Who's at the party?

Work with a partner. You each have a picture of a party. Talk about the pictures to find ten differences. Do not show your picture to your partner!

In my picture three people are dancing.

In my picture four people are dancing.


There's a girl with fair hair.

Is she wearing a black dress?



Pairwork activities Student B

UNIT 2 p13 Who is he?

Surname		
First name	Patrick	
Country		
Job	Accountant	
Address		
Phone number	(21) 434 1075	
Age		
Married	Yes	

UNIT 5 p37 What's in your picture?

This picture of a living room is complete. Student A's picture is incomplete. Answer Student A's questions about the things in the box to help him/her complete the picture.

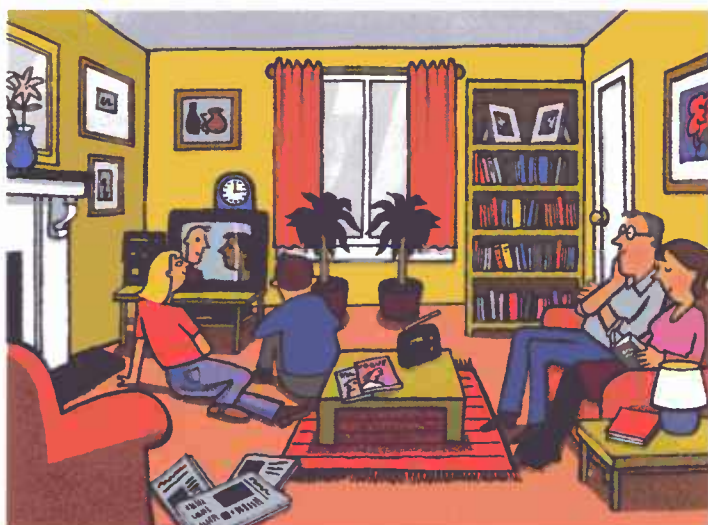
Where's the lamp?

It's on the table.

Where exactly?

Next to the book.

lamp magazines photos plants clock rug



UNIT 6 p50 On the phone

1 You want to call Yoshi. Answer Student A's questions to get Yoshi's telephone number.



2 You are the operator. Ask questions to find out who your partner wants to phone. Start: *International Directory Enquiries. Which country, please?*

Country	
Town	
Last name	
Initial	
Address	

Finish: *The number you require is 998 764 9832*

UNIT 8 p60 Famous inventions

When were things invented? With a partner, ask and answer questions.

When was the camera invented?

In 1826.

That's . . . years ago.

- 1 Coca-Cola was invented in 1886.
- 2 The camera was invented in _____.
- 3 The record player was invented in 1878.
- 4 The first plane was invented in _____.
- 5 Jeans were invented in 1873.
- 6 Hamburgers were invented in _____.
- 7 Cars were invented in 1893.
- 8 The telephone was invented in _____.
- 9 The television was invented in 1926.
- 10 Bicycles were invented in about _____.

UNIT 8 p62 Did you know that?

With a partner, make similar conversations.

- A Did you know that Marco Polo brought spaghetti back from China?
 B Really? He didn't! That's incredible!
 A Well, it's true.
 B Did you know that Napoleon was afraid of cats?
 A He wasn't! I don't believe it!
 B Well, it's true!

Did you know that ...

- ... it took 1,700 years to build the Great Wall of China?
- ... Walt Disney used his own voice for the character of Mickey Mouse?
- ... Shakespeare and Cervantes both died on 23 April 1616?
- ... King Francis I of France bought the painting *Mona Lisa* to put in his bathroom?
- ... when Shakespeare was alive, there were no actresses, only male actors?

UNIT 10 p76 I've got more than you!

Work with a partner. You are both famous film stars. Ask and answer questions to find out who is richer!

I've got five boats.
 How many have you got?

Twelve. I've got this one, four in the Mediterranean, two in the South Pacific, two in the Caribbean, and three in Asia.

Well, I've got thirty cars!

That's nothing! I've got ...

12 boats	18 gold watches	5 houses
30 cars	50 gold and diamond rings	50 million dollars
275 Arab horses	10 servants	

UNIT 11 p84 Who's at the party?

Work with a partner. You each have a picture of a party. Talk about the pictures to find ten differences. Do not show your picture to your partner!

In my picture three people are dancing.

In my picture four people are dancing.

There's a girl with fair hair.

Is she wearing a black dress?



UNIT 12 p96 The weather

Work with a partner. Find out about the weather round the world yesterday. Look at the information on this page. Ask and answer questions to complete the information.

What was the weather like in Athens?

It was sunny and warm. 18 degrees.

WORLD WEATHER			NOON YESTERDAY		
		°C			°C
Athens	S	18	London		
Berlin			Los Angeles	Fg	21
Bombay	R	31	Luxor		
Edinburgh			Milan	Fg	19
Geneva	C	12	Moscow		
Hong Kong			Oslo	Sn	2
Lisbon	C	19			

S = sunny
 C = cloudy
 Fg = foggy
 R = rainy
 Sn = snowy

Word list

Here is a list of most of the new words in the units of *New Headway Elementary Student's Book*.

adj = adjective

adv = adverb

conj = conjunction

opp = opposite

pl = plural

prep = preposition

pron = pronoun

pp = past participle

n = noun

v = verb

infml = informal

US = American English



UNIT 1

apple *n* /'æpl/
Australia *n* /ə'streɪli:ə/
bag *n* /bæg/
because *conj* /bi'kɒz/
Brazil *n* /brə'zɪl/
brother *n* /'brʌðə/
camera *n* /'kæməɾə/
children *n pl* /'tʃɪldrən/
cinema *n* /'sɪnəmə/
country *n* /'kʌntri/
day *n* /deɪ/
dictionary *n* /'dɪkʃənri/
England *n* /'ɪŋɡlənd/
fine *adj* /faɪn/
flat *n* /flæt/
France *n* /frɑ:ns/
from *prep* /frɒm/
Germany *n* /'dʒɜ:məni/
goodbye /gʊd'baɪ/
have *v* /hæv/
hello /hə'ləʊ/
her *pron* /hɜ:/
his *pron* /hɪz/
Hungary *n* /'hʌŋɡəri/
international *adj* /,ɪntə'næʃnəl/
Italy *n* /'ɪtəli/
Japan *n* /dʒə'pæn/
job *n* /dʒɒb/
key *n* /ki:/
language *n* /'læŋɡwɪdʒ/
learn *v* /lɜ:n/
letter *n* /'letə/
live *v* /lɪv/
magazine *n* /mægə'zi:n/
married *adj* /'mæɾɪd/
me *pron* /mi:/
Mexico *n* /'meksɪkəʊ/
mobile *n* /'məʊbaɪl/
my *pron* /maɪ/
name *n* /neɪm/
newspaper *n* /'nju:speɪpə/
nice *adj* /naɪs/
not bad *adj infml* /,nɒt 'bæd/
orange *n* /'ɒrɪndʒ/
Poland *n* /'pəʊlənd/
postcard *n* /'pəʊskɑ:d/
Russia *n* /'rʌʃə/
See you *v infml* /'si: ju:/
sister *n* /'sɪstə/
Spain *n* /speɪn/
spell *v* /spel/
stamp *n* /stæmp/
student *n* /'stju:dənt/
teacher *n* /'ti:tʃə/
telephone number *n*
/teləfəʊn ,nʌmbə/
music *n* /'mju:zɪk/
thank you /'θæŋk ju:/
thanks /θæŋks/
the USA *n* /ðə ju: es' eɪ/
this (book) /ðɪs/
ticket *n* /'tɪkɪt/

very well *adj* /veri 'wel/
want *v* /wɒnt/
what *adv* /wɒt/
where *adv* /weə/
your *pron* /jɔ:/



UNIT 2

accountant *n* /ə'kaʊntənt/
actor *n* /'æktə/
address *n* /ə'dres/
age *n* /eɪdʒ/
American *adj* /ə'merɪkən/
anything else /,eniθɪŋ 'els/
apple pie *n* /,æpl 'paɪ/
at home *adv* /ət 'həʊm/
at work *adv* /ət 'wɜ:k/
aunt *n* /ɑ:nt/
bar *n* /bɑ:/
big *adj* /bɪɡ/
boyfriend *n* /'bɔɪfrend/
café *n* /'kæfeɪ/
cake *n* /keɪk/
Can I have ... ? /,kæn aɪ 'hæv/
Can I help? /,kæn aɪ 'help/
centre *n* /'sentə/
cheap *adj* /tʃi:p/
chicken *n* /'tʃɪkɪn/
chips *n pl* /tʃɪps/
chocolate *n* /'tʃɒklət/
classroom *n* /'kla:srʊm/
coffee *n* /'kɒfi/
cold *adj* /kəʊld/
daughter *n* /'dɔ:tə/
different *adj* /'dɪfrənt/
difficult *adj* /'dɪfɪkəlt/
drink *v* /drɪŋk/
easy *adj* /'i:zi/
egg *n* /eg/
email *n* /'i:meɪl/
exciting *adj* /ɪk'saɪtɪŋ/
expensive *adj* /ɪk'spensɪv/
family *n* /'fæməli/
fast *adj* /fɑ:st/
father *n* /'fɑ:ðə/
first name *n* /'fɜ:st neɪm/
fish *n* /fɪʃ/
friendly *adj* /'frendli/
funny *adj* /'fʌni/
girlfriend *n* /'gɜ:lfrend/
good *adj* /ɡʊd/
grandfather *n* /'grænfɑ:ðə/
grandmother *n* /'grænmʌðə/
hamburger *n* /'hæmbɜ:gə/
happy *adj* /'hæpi/
here *adv* /hɪə/
Here you are /'hiə ju: ,ɑ:/
hi /haɪ/
holiday *n* /'hɒlɪdeɪ/
horrible *adj* /'hɒrəbl/
hot *adj* /hɒt/
how are you? *adv* /,haʊ 'ɑ: ju:/
how much? *adv* /,haʊ 'mʌtʃ/

how old? *adv* /,haʊ 'əʊld/
husband *n* /'hʌzbənd/
ice-cream *n* /aɪs 'kri:m/
Ireland *n* /'aɪələnd/
journalist *n* /'dʒɜ:nəlist/
love *n* /lʌv/
lovely *adj* /'lʌvli/
menu *n* /'menju:/
mineral water *n* /'mɪnərəl ,wɔ:tə/
Monday *n* /'mʌndeɪ/
morning *n* /'mɔ:nɪŋ/
mother *n* /'mʌðə/
near *adj* /'nɪə/
new *adj* /nju:/
nightclub *n* /'naɪtklʌb/
now *adv* /naʊ/
nurse *n* /nɜ:s/
old *adj* /əʊld/
orange juice *n* /'ɒrɪndʒ dʒu:s/
photo *n* /'fəʊtəʊ/
pizza *n* /'pi:tʃə/
please /pli:z/
Poland *n* /'pəʊlənd/
pound *n* /paʊnd/
practice *n* /'præktɪs/
price *n* /praɪs/
restaurant *n* /'restrɒnt/
salad *n* /'sæləd/
sea *n* /si:/
slow *adj* /sləʊ/
small *adj* /smɔ:l/
software designer *n* /'sɒftweə dɪ,zəɪnə/
son *n* /sʌn/
soon *adv* /su:n/
speak *v* /spi:k/
surname *n* /'sɜ:neɪm/
Switzerland *n* /'swɪtsələnd/
tea *n* /ti:/
town *n* /taʊn/
tuna *n* /'tju:nə/
uncle *n* /'ʌŋkl/
understand *v* /ʌndə'stænd/
university *n* /ju:nɪ'vɜ:səti/
who? *pron* /hu:/
wife *n* /waɪf/
write *v* /raɪt/
young *adj* /jʌŋ/



UNIT 3

a little *adj* /ə 'lɪtl/
 afternoon *n* /,ɑ:ftə'nu:n/
 ambulance *n* /'æmbjələns/
 Arabic *adj* /'ærəbɪk/
 architect *n* /'ɑ:kitekt/
 barman *n* /'bɑ:mən/
 be quiet *v* /,bi: 'kwaɪət/
 beautiful *adj* /'bjʊ:tɪfl/
 beer *n* /bɪə/
 before *prep* /brɪ'fɔ:/
 boat *n* /bəʊt/
 boring *adj* /'bɔ:ɪŋ/
 boy *n* /bɔɪ/
 breakfast *n* /'brekfəst/
 building *n* /'bɪldɪŋ/
 businesswoman *n*
 /'bɪznəs,wʊmən/
 busy *adj* /'bɪzi/
 but *conj* /bʌt/
 Canada *n* /'kænədə/
 Canadian *adj* /kə'neɪdiən/
 chef *n* /ʃef/
 city *n* /'sɪti/
 clock *n* /klɒk/
 clothes *n* /kləʊðz/
 collect *v* /kə'lekt/
 come *v* /kʌm/
 concert *n* /'kɒnsət/
 cook *v* /kʊk/
 court *n* /kɔ:t/
 deliver *v* /dɪ'lɪvə/
 design *v* /dɪ'zaɪn/
 do the accounts *v* /,du: ði:
 ə'kaʊnts/
 dog *n* /dɒg/
 drive *n* /draɪv/
 end *n* /end/
 every day *adv* /,evri 'dei/
 Excuse me /ɪk'skju:z ,mi:
 film *n* /fɪlm/
 fireman *n* /'faɪəməŋ/
 fly *v* /flaɪ/
 flying doctor *n* /,flaɪŋ 'dɒktə/
 football *n* /'fʊtbɔ:l/
 free time *n* /,fri: 'taɪm/
 French *adj* /frentʃ/
 German *adj* /'dʒɜ:mən/
 get up *v* /,get 'ʌp/
 girl *n* /gɜ:l/
 glass *n* /glɑ:s/
 go *v* /gəʊ/
 go to bed *v* /,gəʊ tə 'bed/
 guest *n* /gest/
 help *v* /help/
 hospital *n* /'hɒspɪtl/
 hotel *n* /həʊ'tel/
 hour *n* /'aʊə/
 house *n* /haʊs/
 Hungarian *adj* /hʌŋ'geəriən/
 hurry up *v* /,hʌri 'ʌp/
 island *n* /'aɪlənd/
 just after *adv* /dʒʌst 'ɑ:ftə/
 just before *adv* /dʒʌst brɪ'fɔ:/
 Kenya *n* /'kenjə/
 late *adj* /leɪt/
 lawyer *n* /'lɔɪjə/

like *v* /laɪk/
 listen *v* /'lɪsən/
 live *v* /lɪv/
 look after *v* /,lʊk 'ɑ:ftə/
 make *v* /meɪk/
 man *n* /mæn/
 Mexico *n* /'meksɪkəs/
 model *n* /'mɒdl/
 music *n* /'mju:zɪk/
 never *adv* /'nevə/
 never mind /'nevə maɪnd/
 non-stop *adv* /,nɒn 'stɒp/
 of course /əv 'kɔ:s/
 office *n* /'ɒfɪs/
 only *adj* /'əʊnli/
 ordinary *adj* /'ɔ:dənri/
 people *n* pl /'pi:pl/
 perhaps *adv* /pə'hæps/
 petrol *n* /'petrəl/
 pianist *n* /'piənɪst/
 pilot *n* /'paɪlət/
 plane *n* /pleɪn/
 play *v* /pleɪ/
 policeman *n* /pə'li:smən/
 post *n* /pəʊst/
 postman *n* /'pəʊsmən/
 professor *n* /prə'fesə/
 pub *n* /pʌb/
 radio *n* /'reɪdɪəʊ/
 relax *v* /rɪ'læks/
 riding *v* /'raɪdɪŋ/
 school *n* /sku:l/
 Scotland *n* /'skɒtlənd/
 sell *v* /sel/
 serve *v* /sɜ:v/
 shop *n* /ʃɒp/
 shop assistant *n* /'ʃɒp ə,sɪstənt/
 sick *adj* /sɪk/
 singer *n* /'sɪŋə/
 sit down *v* /,sɪt 'daʊn/
 small *adj* /smɔ:l/
 Somali *adj* /sə'mɑ:li/
 Somalia *n* /sə'mɑ:liə/
 Spanish *adj* /'spæɪnɪʃ/
 summer *n* /'sʌmə/
 supper *n* /'sʌpə/
 taxi driver *n* /'tæksɪ ,draɪvə/
 television *n* /'teləvɪʒn/
 tennis *n* /'tenɪs/
 That's right! /ðætɪz 'raɪt/
 then *adv* /ðen/
 there *adv* /ðeə/
 thing *n* /θɪŋ/
 tired *adj* /'taɪəd/
 too *adv* /tu:/
 tourist *n* /'tuərɪst/
 tourist guide *n* /'tuərɪst gaɪd/
 tourist office *n* /'tuərɪst ,ɒfɪs/
 undertaker *n* /'ʌndəteɪkə/
 vanilla *adj* /və'nɪlə/
 vegetarian food *n* /vedʒə'teəriən
 fu:d/
 walk *n, v* /wɔ:k/
 watch *n, v* /wɒtʃ/
 wear *v* /weə/
 week *n* /wi:k/
 weekday *n* /'wi:kdeɪ/
 west *n* /west/

wine *n* /waɪn/
 work *v* /wɜ:k/
 world *n* /wɜ:ld/



UNIT 4

a lot *pron* /ə 'lɒt/
 after *adv* /'ɑ:ftə/
 alcohol *n* /'ælkəhɒl/
 always *adv* /'ɔ:lweɪz/
 autumn *n* /'ɔ:təm/
 bad *adj* /bæd/
 beach *n* /bi:tʃ/
 best *adj* /best/
 boyfriend *n* /'bɔɪfrend/
 bus *n* /bʌs/
 car *n* /kɑ:/
 Christmas *n* /'krɪsməs/
 club *n* /klʌb/
 coach trip *n* /'kəʊtʃ ,trɪp/
 colour *n* /'kʌlə/
 computer *n* /kəm'pjʊ:tə/
 computer game *n* /kəm'pjʊ:tə
 geɪm/
 cool *adj* /ku:l/
 cooking *n* /'kʊkɪŋ/
 cousin *n* /'kʌzn/
 dance *v* /dɑ:ns/
 dancing *n* /'dɑ:nsɪŋ/
 daytime *n* /'deɪtaɪm/
 deposit *n* /dɪ'pɒzɪt/
 dinner *n* /'dɪnə/
 do *v* /du:/
 don't worry *v* /,dəʊnt 'wəri/
 drink *n* /drɪŋk/
 DVD *n* /,di: vi: 'di:/
 early *adj* /'ɜ:li/
 eat *v* /i:t/
 England *n* /'ɪŋɡlənd/
 family *n* /'fæməli/
 fast *adj* /fɑ:st/
 fast food *n* /fɑ:st 'fu:d/
 favourite *adj* /'feɪvərɪt/
 festival *n* /'festɪvl/
 flower *n* /'flaʊə/
 garden *n* /'ɡɑ:dn/
 go out *v* /,gəʊ 'aʊt/
 go running *v* /gəʊ 'rʌnɪŋ/
 gym *n* /dʒɪm/
 hard *adv* /hɑ:d/
 here *adv* /hɪə/
 hot *adj* /hɒt/
 how? *adv* /haʊ/
 I'm sorry /aɪm 'sɒri/
 interesting *adj* /'ɪntrəstɪŋ/
 It doesn't matter /ɪt ,dʌznt
 'mætə/
 joke *n* /'dʒəʊk/
 leisure activity *n* /'leɪʒə(r)
 æk,tɪvəti/
 long *adj* /lɒŋ/
 lunchtime *n* /'lʌntʃtaɪm/
 match *n* /mætʃ/
 mountain *n* /'maʊntɪn/
 near *adv* /nɪə/
 never *adv* /'nevə/

next *adj* /nekst/
 nice *adj* /naɪs/
 north *n* /nɔ:θ/
 Norway *n* /'nɔ:weɪ/
 often *adv* /'ɒfən/, /'ɒftən/
 oh dear /əʊ 'diə/
 open *v* /'əʊpən/
 orange *n* /'ɒrɪndʒ/
 pardon? /'pɑ:dn/
 park *n* /pɑ:k/
 parents *n* pl /'peərənts/
 pink *adj* /pɪŋk/
 Portuguese *adj* /,pɔ:tʃu'gɪz/
 rainy *adj* /'reɪni/
 reading *n* /'ri:dɪŋ/
 really? /'riəli/
 red *adj* /red/
 rugby *n* /'rʌɡbi/
 running *n* /'rʌnɪŋ/
 sailing *n* /'seɪlɪŋ/
 season *n* /'si:zn/
 skiing *n* /'ski:ŋ/
 smoke *v* /sməʊk/
 sometimes *adv* /səm'taɪmz/
 south *n* /saʊθ/
 special *adj* /'speʃl/
 spend *v* /spend/
 sport *n* /spɔ:t/
 spring *n* /sprɪŋ/
 start *v* /stɑ:t/
 still *adv* /stɪl/
 sunbathing *n* /'sʌnbetɪŋ/
 sunny *adj* /'sʌni/
 surfing *n* /'sɜ:fɪŋ/
 swimming pool *n* /'swɪmɪŋ pu:l/
 take *v* /teɪk/
 take photos *v* /,teɪk 'fəʊtəʊz/
 team *n* /ti:m/
 Thailand *n* /'taɪlənd/
 ticket *n* /'tɪkɪt/
 That's OK /ðætɪz əʊ,keɪ/
 trip *n* /trɪp/
 traffic *n* /'træfɪk/
 train *v* /treɪn/
 travel *v* /'trævl/
 tropical *adj* /'trɒpɪkl/
 usually *adv* /'ju:ʒəli/
 visit *v* /'vɪzɪt/
 warm *adj* /wɔ:m/
 waterskiing *n* /'wɔ:tə,ski:ŋ/
 water sports *n* /'wɔ:tə ,spɔ:ts/
 weekday *n* /'wi:kdeɪ/
 What does ... mean? /wɒt dəz
 '... mi:n/
 what time? /wɒt 'taɪm/
 what? /wɒt/
 when? /wen/
 where? /weə/
 white *adj* /waɪt/
 why? /waɪ/
 win *v* /wɪn/
 window *n* /'wɪndəʊ/
 windsurfing *n* /'wɪnd,sɜ:fɪŋ/
 winter *n* /'wɪntə/
 work *n* /wɜ:k/
 year *n* /jɪə/

UNIT 5

address book *n* /ə'dres ,bʊk/
 agree *v* /ə'gri:/
 all the time /ɔ:l ðə 'taɪm/
 any /'eni/
 armchair *n* /'ɑ:mtʃeə/
 bank *n* /bæŋk/
 baker's *n* /'beɪkəz/
 bathroom *n* /'bɑ:θrʊm/
 bedroom *n* /'bedrʊm/
 best *adj* /best/
 block *n* /blɒk/
 book *n* /bʊk/
 bookshelf *n* /'bʊkʃelf/
 bookshop *n* /'bʊkʃɒp/
 both *pron* /bəʊθ/
 bread *n* /bred/
 briefcase *n* /'bri:fkeɪs/
 bubble *n* /'bʌbl/
 bus stop *n* /'bʌs ,stɒp/
 bus ticket *n* /'bʌs ,tɪktɪ/
 car park *n* /'kɑ:,pɑ:k/
 cat *n* /kæt/
 champagne *n* /ʃæm'peɪn/
 Cheers! /tʃiəz/
 chemist's *n* /'kemɪsts/
 Chinese *adj* /tʃaɪ'ni:z/
 church *n* /tʃɜ:tʃ/
 cinema *n* /'sɪnəmə:/
 clock *n* /klɒk/
 collect *v* /kə'lekt/
 comfortable *adj* /'kɒmfəbl/
 completely *adv* /kəm'pli:tli/
 computer *n* /kəm'pjʊ:tə/
 cooker *n* /'kʊkə/
 corner *n* /'kɔ:nə/
 cup *n* /kʌp/
 cupboard *n* /'kʌbəd/
 curtains *n* /'kɜ:tnz/
 designer *n* /dɪ'zainə/
 dining room *n* /'daɪnɪŋ ,rʊm/
 dirty *adj* /'dɜ:ti/
 dog *n* /dɒg/
 DVD player *n* /,di:vi:'di: ,pleɪə/
 especially *adv* /ɪ'speʃəli/
 everything *pron* /'evrɪθɪŋ/
 exactly *adv* /ɪg'zæktli/
 eyes *n* /aɪz/
 far *adv* /fɑ:/
 fireplace *n* /'faɪəpleɪs/
 flat *n* /flæt/
 floor *n* /flɔ:/
 fork *n* /fɔ:k/
 fridge *n* /frɪdʒ/
 front door *n* /,frʌnt 'dɔ:/
 furniture *n* /'fɜ:nɪtʃə/
 future *n* /'fju:tʃə/
 garden *n* /'gɑ:dn/
 glass *n* /glɑ:s/
 home *n* /həʊm/
 how many? /,haʊ 'meni/

idea *n* /aɪ'diə/
 in front of *prep* /ɪn 'frʌnt əv/
 Internet café *n* /,ɪntənət 'kæfeɪ/
 just (= only) *adv* /dʒʌst/
 kitchen *n* /'kɪtʃɪn/
 knife *n* /naɪf/
 lamp *n* /læmp/
 left *adv* (*opp* right) /left/
 living room *n* /'lɪvɪŋ ,rʊm/
 lots (of books) /lɒts/
 mirror *n* /'mɪrə/
 mobile *n* /,məʊbaɪl/
 modern *adj* /'mɒdən/
 most of the time /'məʊst əv ðə ,taɪm/
 music shop *n* /'mju:zɪk ,ʃɒp/
 natural *adj* /'nætʃrəl/
 next to *prep* /'nekst ,tu:/
 not a lot *adj* /nɒt ə 'lɒt/
 notebook *n* /'nəʊtbʊk/
 on *prep* /ɒn/
 over there /əʊvə 'ðeə/
 park *n* /pɑ:k/
 pen *n* /pen/
 perfect *adj* /'pɜ:fɪkt/
 picture *n* /'pɪktʃə/
 plant *n* /plɑ:nt/
 plate *n* /pleɪt/
 post box *n* /'pəʊst bɒks/
 radio *n* /'reɪdɪəʊ/
 railway station *n* /'reɪlweɪ ,steɪʃn/
 reasons *n pl* /'ri:znz/
 record *n* /'rekɔ:d/
 room *n* /rʊm/, /ru:m/
 round *adj* /raʊnd/
 route *n* /ru:t/
 rug *n* /rʌg/
 sandwich *n* /'sænwɪdʒ/
 shelf *n* /ʃelf/
 sleep *v* /sli:p/
 sofa *n* /'səʊfə/
 some /sʌm/
 spoon *n* /spu:n/
 stamps *n pl* /stæmps/
 stop (bus) *n* /stɒp/
 stereo *n* /'steriəʊ/
 sunny *adj* /'sʌni/
 supermarket *n* /'su:pə,mɑ:kɪt/
 table *n* /teɪbl/
 tall *adj* /tɔ:l/
 Thanks a lot! /,θæŋks ə 'lɒt/
 telephone *n* /'teləfəʊn/
 television *n* /'teləvɪʒn/
 think *v* /θɪŋk/
 under *prep* /'ʌndə/
 upstairs *adv* /,ʌp'steəz/
 verandah *n* /və'rændə/
 visitors *n pl* /'vɪzɪtəz/
 wall *n* /wɔ:l/
 washing machine *n* /'wɒʃɪŋ ,məʃi:n/
 window *n* /'wɪndəʊ/

UNIT 6

advertisement *n* /əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt/
 all right /ɔ:l 'raɪt/
 at the moment /ət ðə 'məʊmənt/
 believe *v* /bɪ'li:v/
 bestseller *n* /best'selə/
 (the) blues *n* /ðə 'blu:z/
 brilliant *adj* /'brɪliənt/
 can't stop *v* /,kɑ:nt 'stɒp/
 character *n* /'kærəktə/
 check *v* /tʃek/
 conversation *n* /kɒnvə'seɪʃn/
 countryside *n* /'kʌntrɪsaɪd/
 do homework *v* /,du: ,həʊmɜ:k/
 draw *v* /drɔ:/
 drive *v* /draɪv/
 drums *n* /drʌmz/
 eye *n* /aɪ/
 fall in love *v* /fɔ:l ɪn 'lʌv/
 fantastic *adj* /fæn'tæstɪk/
 fantasy *n* /'fæntəsi/
 fax number *n* /'fæks ,nʌmbə/
 feel *v* /fi:l/
 flamenco *n* /flə'menɪkəʊ/
 foreign *adj* /'fɔ:rən/
 genius *n* /'dʒi:niəs/
 golf *n* /gɒlf/
 hear *v* /hɪə/
 head *n* /hed/
 hour *n* /'aʊə/
 ill *adj* /ɪl/
 I'm afraid /,aɪm ə'freɪd/
 initial *n* /ɪ'nɪʃl/
 interview *n* /'ɪntəvjʊ:/
 Japanese *adj* /dʒæpə'ni:z/
 job *n* /dʒɒb/
 know *v* /nəʊ/
 last month *adv* /,lɑ:st 'mʌnθ/
 later *adv* /'leɪtə/
 laugh *v* /lɑ:f/
 little *adj* /'lɪtl/
 look forward to *v* /,lʊk 'fɔ:wəd tu/
 magic *n* /'mædʒɪk/
 manager *n* /'mænɪdʒə/
 message *n* /'mesɪdʒ/
 no-one *n* /'nəʊwʌn/
 note *n* /nəʊt/
 now *adv* /naʊ/
 number one *n* /nʌmbə 'wʌn/
 paint *v* /peɪnt/
 party *n* /'pɑ:ti/
 play *n* /pleɪ/
 poetry *n* /'pəʊətri/
 pop music *n* /'pɒp ,mju:zɪk/
 prefer *v* /prɪ'fɜ:/
 read *v* /ri:d/
 really *adv* /'ri:əli/
 receptionist *n* /rɪ'sepʃənɪst/
 river *n* /'rɪvə/
 sea *n* /si:/

see *v* /si:/
 sell *v* /sel/
 shy *adj* /ʃaɪ/
 sing *v* /sɪŋ/
 sit *v* /sɪt/
 so *adj* /səʊ/
 soul singer *n* /'səʊl ,sɪŋə/
 spelling *n* /'speliŋ/
 spend *v* /spend/
 stop *v* /stɒp/
 story *n* /'stɔ:ri/
 suddenly *adv* /'sʌdnli/
 surprised *adj* /sə'praɪzd/
 surprising *adj* /sə'praɪzɪŋ/
 swim *v* /swɪm/
 talented *adj* /'tæləntɪd/
 teenager *n* /'ti:neɪdʒə/
 theatre *n* /'θiətə/
 today *adv* /tə'deɪ/
 travel *v* /'trævl/
 translate *v* /trænz'leɪt/
 until *conj* /ʌn'tɪl/
 use *v* /ju:z/
 very *adv* /'veri/
 very well *adv* /,veri 'wel/
 village *n* /'vɪlɪdʒ/
 voice *n* /vɔɪs/
 was born *v* /wəz 'bɔ:n/
 wear *v* /weə/
 wedding *n* /'wedɪŋ/
 well *adv* /wel/
 worried *adj* /'wʌrɪd/
 yesterday *adv* /'jestədeɪ/
 yesterday evening *adv* /'jestədeɪ ,i:vɪnɪŋ/



UNIT 7

act *v* /ækt/
 activity *n* /æk'tɪvəti/
 aeroplane *n* /'eərəpleɪn/
 after that *adv* /,ɑ:ftə 'ðæt/
 agree *v* /ə'ɡri:/
 air show *n* /'eə ʃəʊ/
 another *pron* /ə'nʌðə/
 April *n* /'eɪprəl/
 astronaut *n* /'æstrənɔ:t/
 at that moment /ət 'ðæt
 məʊmənt/
 athlete *n* /'æθli:t/
 Atlantic *n* /ət'læntɪk/
 become *v* /brɪ'kʌm/
 begin *v* /brɪ'ɡɪn/
 birthday *n* /'bɜ:θdeɪ/
 break a record /breɪk ə
 'rekɔ:d/
 car crash *n* /'kɑ: kræʃ/
 career *n* /kə'riə/
 car park *n* /'kɑ: pɑ:k/
 century *n* /'sentʃəri/
 champion *n* /'tʃæmpjən/
 change *v* /tʃeɪndʒ/
 Christmas Day *n* /,krɪsməs 'deɪ/
 Congratulations!
 /kən,ɡrætʃu'leɪʃnz/
 countryside *n* /'kʌntrisaɪd/
 dangerous *adj* /'deɪndʒərəs/
 decide *v* /dɪ'saɪd/
 die *v* /daɪ/
 disappear *v* /dɪsə'piə/
 earn *v* /ɜ:n/
 email *n* /'i:meɪl/
 end *n v* /end/
 Europe *n* /'jʊərəp/
 everybody *pron* /'evrɪbɒdi/
 excellent *adj* /'eksələnt/
 experience *n* /ɪk'spiəriəns/
 famous *adj* /'feɪməs/
 farm *n* /fɑ:m/
 fighter jet *n* /'faɪtə ,dʒet/
 film star *n* /'fɪlm stɑ:/
 film studio *n* /'fɪlm ,stju:diəʊ/
 finally *adv* /'famaɪli/
 first (... next) *adv* /fɜ:st/
 flight *n* /flaɪt/
 foreign minister *n* /'fɔ:rən
 'mɪnɪstə/
 fortunately *adv* /'fɔ:tʃənətli/
 guitar *n* /ɡɪ'tɑ:/
 handbag *n* /'hændbæg/
 have a holiday *v* /,hæv ə
 'hɒlədeɪ/
 immediately *adv* /ɪ'mi:diətli/
 important *adj* /ɪm'pɔ:tənt/
 Independence Day *n*
 /ɪndɪ'pendəns ,deɪ/
 join *v* /dʒɔɪn/
 June *n* /dʒu:n/
 later *adv* /'leɪtə/
 leader *n* /'li:də/
 leave *v* /li:v/
 life *n* /laɪf/
 march *n* /mɑ:tʃ/
 marry *v* /'mæri/
 meal *n* /mi:l/
 medal *n* /'medl/
 million *n* /'mɪljən/
 money *n* /'mʌni/
 Mother's Day *n* /'mʌðəz ,deɪ/
 nearly *adv* /'niəli/
 news *n* /nju:z/
 November *n* /nəʊ'vembə/
 olympics *n* /ə'lɪmpɪks/
 over *prep* /'əʊvə/
 orange juice *n* /'ɒrɪndʒ dʒu:s/
 own *v* /əʊn/
 Pacific Ocean *n* /pə'sɪfɪk 'əʊʃən/
 personal computer *n* /,pɜ:sənəl
 kəm'pjʊ:tə/
 pilot *n* /'paɪlət/
 politician *n* /,pɒlə'tɪʃn/
 politics *n* /'pɒlətɪks/
 popular *adj* /'pɒpjələ/
 present (= birthday) *n* /'preznt/
 president *n* /'prezɪdənt/
 prime minister *n* /,praɪm
 'mɪnɪstə/
 public *n* /'pʌblɪk/
 remember *v* /rɪ'membə/
 retire *v* /rɪ'taɪə/
 rich *adj* /rɪtʃ/
 satellite *n* /'sætələɪt/
 secret *adj* /'si:krət/
 sell *v* /sel/
 September *n* /sep'tembə/
 shoes *n* /ʃu:z/
 short *adj* /ʃɔ:t/
 sleep *v* /sli:p/
 soon *adv* /su:n/
 space *n* /speɪs/
 star *n* /stɑ:/
 start *v* /stɑ:t/
 study *v* /stʌdi/
 subject (school) *n* /'sʌbdʒekt/
 sure *adj* /ʃʊə/, /ʃɔ:/
 survive *v* /sə'vaɪv/
 temple *n* /'templ/
 test flight *n* /'test flaɪt/
 test pilot *n* /'test paɪlət/
 thank goodness /θæŋk 'ɡʊdnəs/
 think *v* /θɪŋk/
 tomorrow *adv* /tə'mɒrəʊ/
 travel *v* /'trævl/
 war *n* /wɔ:/
 win *v* /wɪn/



UNIT 8

advice *v* /əd'vaɪs/
 afraid *adj* /ə'freɪd/
 (3 years) ago *adv* /ə'ɡəʊ/
 all the time *adv* /,ɔ:l ðə 'taɪm/
 arrive *v* /ə'raɪv/
 (coffee) break *n* /breɪk/
 bicycle *n* (bike) /'baɪsɪkl/
 birthday *n* /'bɜ:θdeɪ/
 call *v* /kɔ:l/
 Christmas Day *n* /,krɪsməs 'deɪ/
 clean *v* /kli:n/
 couple *n pl* /'kʌpl/
 cry *v* /kraɪ/
 date *n* /deɪt/
 design *n* /dɪ'zaɪn/
 driver *n* /'draɪvə/
 easy *adj* /'i:zi/
 Easter Day *n* /,i:stə 'deɪ/
 everyone *n* /'evrɪwʌn/
 experiment *n* /ɪk'sperɪmənt/
 fall *n* US (autumn) /fɔ:l/
 fall in love *v* /fɔ:l ɪn lʌv/
 feelings *n pl* /'fi:lɪŋz/
 forget *v* /fə'get/
 get engaged *v* /,get ɪn'ɡeɪdʒd/
 get married *v* /,get 'mæɪrɪd/
 give *v* /ɡɪv/
 Good luck! /,ɡʊd 'lʌk/
 government *n* /'ɡʌvənmənt/
 green *adj* /ɡri:n/
 Halloween *n* /,hæləʊ'i:n/
 horse *n* /hɔ:s/
 idea *n* /aɪ'dɪə/
 in a hurry /,ɪn ə 'hʌri/
 incredible *adj* /ɪn'kredəbl/
 inside *prep* /ɪnsaɪd/
 invent *v* /ɪn'vent/
 invention *n* /ɪn'veɪʃn/
 invitation *n* /ɪnvɪ'teɪʃn/
 jeans *n pl* /dʒi:nz/
 laugh *v* /lɑ:f/
 long ago *adv* /lɒŋ ə'ɡəʊ/
 midnight *n* /'mɪdnɑɪt/
 mistake *n* /mɪs'teɪk/
 Mother's Day *n* /'mʌðəz deɪ/
 New Year's Eve *n* /nju: jɪəz 'i:v/
 notice *v* /'nəʊtɪs/
 nowadays *adv* /'naʊədeɪz/
 opera *n* /'ɒprə/
 painter *n* /'peɪntə/
 phone call *n* /'fəʊn ,kɔ:l/
 same to you /seɪm tə 'ju:/
 send *v* /send/
 snow *n* /snəʊ/
 spaghetti *n* /spə'ɡeti/
 studio *n* /'stju:diəʊ/
 sweet *n* /'swi:t/
 term *n* /tɜ:m/
 Thanksgiving *n* /θæŋks'ɡrɪvɪŋ/
 tomorrow *n* /tə'mɒrəʊ/
 type *n* /taɪp/
 unhappy *adj* /ʌn'hæpi/
 Valentine's Day *n* /'væləntaɪnz
 deɪ/
 wedding day *n* /'wedɪŋ deɪ/
 windscreen wiper *n* /'wɪndskri:n
 ,waɪpə/



UNIT 9

a bit *n* /ə 'bit/
 all sorts *n pl* /'ɔ:l sɔ:ts/
 anybody *pron* /'eni'bɒdi/
 anything else? /eniθɪŋ 'els/
 anyway *adv* /'eniweɪ/
 apple juice *n* /'æpl dʒu:s/
 away from *adv* /ə'weɪ frəm/
 bacon *n* /'beɪkən/
 banana *n* /bə'nɑ:nə/
 beef *n* /bi:f/
 beer *n* /biə/
 biscuit *n* /'bɪskɪt/
 book *v* /bʊk/
 borrow *v* /'bɒrəʊ/
 bottle *n* /'bɒtl/
 box *n* /bɒks/
 bread *n* /bred/
 Caribbean *n* /kæri'bi:ən/
 carrot *n* /'kærət/
 central *adj* /'sentrəl/
 check in/out *v* /tʃek 'in/'aut/
 cheese *n* /tʃi:z/
 Chile *n* /'tʃili/
 chilli *n* /'tʃili/
 China *n* /'tʃaɪnə/
 Chinese *adj* /tʃaɪ'ni:z/
 chocolate *n* /'tʃɒklət/
 chopsticks *n pl* /'tʃɒpstʌks/
 close *v* /kləʊz/
 coffee *n* /'kɒfi/
 control *v* /kən'trəʊl/
 course (of a meal) *n* /kɔ:s/
 cream *n* /kri:m/
 delicious *adj* /dɪ'lɪʃəs/
 depend *v* /dɪ'pend/
 dessert *n* /dɪ'zɜ:t/
 disgusting *adj* /dɪs'gʌstɪŋ/
 dollar *n* /'dɒlə/
 double room *n* /ˌdʌbl 'rʊm/
 egg *n* /eg/
 either *adv* /'aɪðə/
 environment *n* /ˌɪn'vaɪrənmənt/
 especially *adv* /ɪ'speʃəli/
 farm *v* /fɑ:m/
 finger *n* /'fɪŋɡə/
 fish *n* /fɪʃ/
 for example /fə ɪg'zɑ:mpl/
 foreign *adj* /'fɒrən/
 fruit *n* /fru:t/
 full *adj* /fʊl/
 garlic *n* /'gɑ:lk/
 glad *adj* /glæd/
 ham *n* /hæm/
 herring *n* /'herɪŋ/
 history *n* /'hɪstri/
 homework *n* /'həʊmwɜ:k/
 horrible *adj* /'hɒrəbl/
 human *adj* /'hju:mən/
 hungry *adj* /'hʌŋɡri/
 ice-cream *n* /aɪs 'kri:m/
 India *n* /'ɪndiə/
 kilo *n* /'ki:ləʊ/
 land *n* /lənd/
 lend *v* /lend/
 lunch *n* /lʌntʃ/
 main (meal) *adj* /meɪn/

meat *n* /mi:t/
 menu *n* /'menju:/
 (the) Middle East *n* /('ðə) ,mɪdl
 'i:st/
 milk *n* /mɪlk/
 move on *v* /mu:v 'on/
 mushroom *n* /'mʌʃrʊm/
 noodles *n pl* /'nu:dlz/
 north *n* /nɔ:θ/
 orange *n* /'ɒrɪndʒ/
 part (of the world) *n* /pɑ:t/
 pass (= give) *v* /pɑ:s/
 pasta *n* /'pæstə/
 pea *n* /pi:/
 petrol *n* /'petrəl/
 poor *adj* /pɔ:/
 possible *adj* /'pɒsəbl/
 potatoes *n pl* /pə'teɪtəʊz/
 recipe *n* /'resəpi/
 rice *n* /raɪs/
 right now *adv* /raɪt 'naʊ/
 salt *n* /sɔ:lt/, /sɒlt/
 sardine *n* /sɑ:'di:n/
 sausages *n pl* /'sɒsɪdʒɪz/
 Scandinavian *adj*
 /skændɪ'neɪviən/
 shopping list *n* /'ʃɒpɪŋ ,lɪst/
 single room *n* /ˌsɪŋɡl 'rʊm/
 south *n* /saʊθ/
 sparkling water *n* /spɔ:klɪŋ
 'wɔ:tə/
 still water *n* /stɪl 'wɔ:tə/
 strawberry *n* /'strɒ:bəri/
 sugar *n* /'ʃʊɡə/
 table *n* /'teɪbl/
 tea *n* /ti:/
 toast *n* /təʊst/
 together *adv* /tə'geðə/
 tomato *n* /tə'mɑ:təʊ/
 trainers *n pl* /'treɪnəz/
 transport *v* /træns'pɔ:t/
 typical *adj* /'tɪpɪkl/
 vegetable *n* /'vedʒəbl/
 washing-up *n* /ˌwɒʃɪŋ ˈʌp/
 yoghurt *n* /'jɒɡət/
 yours faithfully /jɔ:z 'feɪθəfəli/



UNIT 10

air *n* /eə/
 Arab *n* /'ærəb/
 bank (of the river) *n* /bæŋk/
 birthplace *n* /'bɜ:θpleɪs/
 bridge *n* /brɪdʒ/
 building *n* /'bɪldɪŋ/
 busy *adj* /'bɪzi/
 capital city *n* /ˌkæpɪtl 'sɪti/
 car park *n* /'kɑ: ,pɑ:k/
 cathedral *n* /kə'thi:drəl/
 church *n* /tʃɜ:tʃ/
 clean *adj* /kli:n/
 coast *n* /kəʊst/
 commercial *adj* /kə'mɜ:ʃl/
 composer *n* /kəm'pəʊzə/
 concert *n* /'kɒnsət/
 cosmopolitan *adj*
 /ˌkɒzmə'pɒlɪtən/
 cottage *n* /'kɒtɪdʒ/
 country (not the city) *n*
 /'kʌntri/
 corner *n* /'kɔ:nə/
 cultural centre *n* /'kʌltʃərəl
 ,sentə/
 dirty *adj* /'dɜ:ti/
 district *n* /'dɪstrɪkt/
 exhibition *n* /ˌeksɪ'bɪʃn/
 expensive *adj* /ɪk'spensɪv/
 factory *n* /'fæktəri/
 field *n* /fi:ld/
 fiesta *n* /fi:'estə/
 group *n* /gru:p/
 gypsy *n* /'dʒɪpsi/
 hand clapping *n* /'hænd ,klæpɪŋ/
 hill *n* /hɪl/
 historical *adj* /hɪs'tɒrɪkl/
 immigrant *n* /'ɪmɪgrənt/
 independent *adj* /ˌɪndɪ'pendənt/
 influence *n* /'ɪnflu:əns/
 intelligent *adj* /ɪn'telɪdʒənt/
 lake *n* /leɪk/
 Latin *adj* /'lætɪn/
 library *n* /'laɪbrəri/
 mixture *n* /'mɪkstʃə/
 mountain *n* /'maʊntɪn/
 mud *n* /mʌd/
 museum *n* /mju:'ziəm/
 noisy *adj* /'nɔɪzi/
 off *prep* /ɒf/
 open *v* /'əʊpən/
 park *n* /pɑ:k/
 past *prep* /pɑ:st/
 population *n* /ˌpɒpjə'leɪʃn/
 port *n* /pɔ:t/
 practise *v* /'præktɪs/
 pretty *adj* /'prɪti/
 quiet *adj* /'kwaɪət/
 resort *n* /rɪ'zɔ:t/
 river *n* /'rɪvə/
 rule *v* /ru:l/
 safe *adj* /seɪf/
 sail *v* /seɪl/
 salsa *n* /'sælsə/
 second *adj* /'sekənd/
 ship *n* /ʃɪp/
 slave *n* /sleɪv/

socialist revolution /ˌsəʊʃəlɪst
 revə'lʊ:ʃn/
 song *n* /sɒŋ/
 spice *n* /'spais/
 stand *v* /stænd/
 street *n* /stri:t/
 surfboard *n* /'sɜ:fbɔ:d/
 tall *adj* /tɔ:l/
 tango *n* /'tæŋɡəʊ/
 tobacco *n* /tə'bækəʊ/
 village *n* /'vɪlɪdʒ/
 wide *adj* /waɪd/
 wood *n* /wʊd/

UNIT 11

baby *n* /'beɪbi/
 ballet shoe *n* /'bæleɪ ʃuː/
 baseball cap *n* /'beɪsbɔːl ,kæp/
 boot *n* /buːt/
 changing rooms *n pl* /'tʃeɪndʒɪŋ ,ruːmz/
 cherish *v* /'tʃerɪʃ/
 chewing gum *n* /'tʃuːɪŋ ,ɡʌm/
 choose *v* /tʃuːz/
 coat *n* /kəʊt/
 credit card *n* /'kredɪt ,kɑːd/
 dark *adj* /dɑːk/
 deny *v* /dɪ'naɪ/
 dress *n* /dres/
 fair (hair) *adj* /feə/
 fresh *adj* /freʃ/
 good-looking *adj* /,ɡʊd'lʊkɪŋ/
 grey *adj* /ɡreɪ/
 hair *n* /heə/
 handsome *adj* /'hænsəm/
 happiness *n* /'hæpɪnəs/
 hat *n* /hæt/
 jacket *n* /'dʒækt/
 joy *n* /dʒɔɪ/
 jumper *n* /'dʒʌmpə/
 kiss *v* /kɪs/
 long *adj* /lɒŋ/
 pay *v* /peɪ/
 shirt *n* /ʃɜːt/
 shoe *n* /ʃuː/
 shorts *n pl* /ʃɔːts/
 size *n* /saɪz/
 skirt *n* /skɜːt/
 smile *v* /smaɪl/
 solitary *adj* /'sɒlətri/, /'sɒlətəri/
 something *n* /'sʌmθɪŋ/
 suit *n* /suːt/
 suitcase *n* /'suːtkeɪs/
 sunglasses *n pl* /'sʌŋɡləːsɪz/
 sunrise *n* /'sʌnraɪz/
 T-shirt *n* /'tiːʃɜːt/
 talk *v* /tɔːk/
 tie *n* /taɪ/
 tennis racket *n* /'tenɪs ,rækt/
 trainers *n pl* /'treɪnəz/
 trousers *n pl* /'traʊəzəz/
 try on *v* /,traɪ 'ɒn/
 umbrella *n* /ʌm'brelə/
 whose? *pron* /huːz/
 wing *n* /wɪŋ/

UNIT 12

adventure *n* /əd'ventʃə/
 art *n* /ɑːt/
 bottom *n* /'bɒtəm/
 breath *n* /'breθ/
 breathe *v* /briːð/
 calm *adj* /kɑːm/
 catch (a bus) *v* /kætʃ/
 climb *v* /klaɪm/
 cloudy *adj* /'klaʊdi/
 continue *v* /kən'tɪnjuː/
 cool *adj* /kuːl/
 conservation *n* /kɒnsə'veɪʃn/
 (18) degrees *n pl* /dɪ'ɡriːz/
 deep *adj* /diːp/
 discover *v* /dɪ'skʌvə/
 drive *v* /draɪv/
 due (a baby) *adj* /djuː/
 fall *v* /fɔːl/
 foggy *adj* /'fɒɡi/
 free-diving *n* /'friː daɪvɪŋ/
 free-running *n* /'friː rʌnɪŋ/
 freedom *n* /'friːdəm/
 grow up *v* /,ɡrəʊ 'ʌp/
 gymnastics *n* /dʒɪm'næstɪks/
 join *v* /dʒɔɪn/
 jump *v* /dʒʌmp/
 lion *n* /'laɪən/
 meeting *n* /'miːtɪŋ/
 metre *n* /'miːtə/
 move *n* /muːv/
 Oh my goodness! /əʊ maɪ
 'ɡʊdnəs/
 outside *prep* /'aʊtsaɪd/
 oxygen *n* /'ɒksɪdʒən/
 pain *n* /peɪn/
 peace *n* /piːs/
 philosophy *n* /fɪ'lɒsəfi/
 plan *n, v* /plæn/
 quiet *adj* /'kwaɪət/
 rainforest *n* /'reɪnfɒrɪst/
 retire *v* /rɪ'taɪə/
 roof *n* /ruːf/
 safe *adj* /seɪf/
 scuba-dive *v* /'skuːbədaɪv/
 sneeze *v* /sniːz/
 snowy *adj* /'snəʊi/
 stay *v* /steɪ/
 suggestion *n* /sə'dʒestʃən/
 sunbathe *v* /'sʌnbæθ/
 swimming costume *n* /'swɪmɪŋ
 ,kɒstjuːm/
 try *v* /traɪ/
 umbrella *n* /ʌm'brelə/
 underwater *adj, adv* /ʌndə'wɔːtə/
 view *n* /vjuː/
 weather *n* /'weðə/
 windy *adj* /'wɪndi/

UNIT 13

annoyed *adj* /ə'noɪd/
 annoying *adj* /ə'noɪɪŋ/
 asleep *adj* /ə'sliːp/
 badly *adv* /'bædli/
 belong *v* /bɪ'lɒŋ/
 burglar *n* /'bɜːɡlə/
 careful *adj* /'keəfl/
 carefully *adv* /'keəfəli/
 cent *n* /sent/
 chain *n* /tʃeɪn/
 comb *n* /kəʊm/
 count *v* /kaʊnt/
 create *v* /kriː'eɪt/
 cry *v* /kraɪ/
 cut *v* /kʌt/
 deodorant *n* /diː'əʊdərənt/
 dwarf *n* /dwɔːf/
 explain *v* /ɪk'spleɪn/
 fast *adv* /fɑːst/
 fluently *adv* /'fluːəntli/
 fortunately *adv* /'fɔːtʃənətli/
 gun *n* /ɡʌn/
 habit *n* /'hæbɪt/
 immediately *adv* /ɪ'miːdiətli/
 it doesn't matter /ɪt ,dʌznt 'mætə/
 marathon *n* /'mærəθən/
 mirror *n* /'mɪrə/
 nationality *n* /næʃə'næləti/
 plaster *n* /'plɑːstə/
 please *v* /pliːz/
 quietly *adv* /'kwaɪətli/
 quiz *n* /kwɪz/
 rose *n* /rəʊz/
 scream *n* /skriːm/
 shampoo *n* /ʃæm'puː/
 slowly *adv* /'sləʊli/
 special *adj* /'speʃl/
 suddenly *adv* /'sʌdnli/
 suncream *n* /'sʌnkriːm/
 support (a team) *v* /sə'pɔːt/
 tiring *adj* /'taɪərɪŋ/
 toothbrush *n* /'tuːθbrʌʃ/
 toothpaste *n* /'tuːθpeɪst/
 typical *adj* /'tɪpɪkl/
 unhappiness *n* /'ʌnhæpɪnəs/
 worried *adj* /'wʌrɪd/
 worrying *adj* /'wʌrɪɪŋ/

UNIT 14

abroad *adv* /ə'brɔːd/
 airport *n* /'eəpɔːt/
 attack *v* /ə'tæk/
 announcement *n* /ə'naʊnsmənt/
 arrival hall *n* /ə'raɪvl ,hɔːl/
 Belgium *n* /'beldʒəm/
 board *v* /bɔːd/
 boarding pass *n* /'bɔːdɪŋ ,pɑːs/
 boat ride *n* /'bəʊt ,raɪd/
 business class *n* /'bɪznəs ,klɑːs/
 check in *v* /tʃek 'ɪn/
 check-in desk *n* /'tʃek ɪn ,desk/
 comfort *n* /'kʌmfət/
 competition *n* /kəmpe'tɪʃn/
 cycle *v* /'saɪkl/
 deliver *v* /dɪ'lɪvə/
 departures board *n* /dɪ'pɔːtʃəz
 ,bɔːd/
 departure gate *n* /dɪ'pɔːtʃə ,ɡert/
 departure lounge *n* /dɪ'pɔːtʃə
 ,laʊndʒ/
 excellent *adj* /'eksələnt/
 execute *v* /eksɪkjʊt/
 flag *n* /flæg/
 flight *n* /flaɪt/
 fly *v* /flaɪ/
 gate (in an airport) *n* /ɡert/
 (the) Government *n* /'ɡʌvənmənt/
 hand luggage *n* /'hænd ,lʌɡɪdʒ/
 hearse *n* /hɜːs/
 hitch-hike *v* /'hɪtʃ,hɑɪk/
 honeymoon *n* /'hʌnɪmuːn/
 horse and cart *n* /,hɔːs ən 'kɑːt/
 hurt *v* /hɜːt/
 jumbo jet *n* /,dʒʌmbəʊ 'dʒet/
 kill *v* /kɪl/
 knee *n* /niː/
 last call *n* /,lɑːst 'kɔːl/
 lie *v* /laɪ/
 lift *n* /lɪft/
 locust *n* /'ləʊkəst/
 loud *adj* /laʊd/
 luggage *n* /'lʌɡɪdʒ/
 mad *adj* /mæd/
 miss *v* /mɪs/
 motorbike *n* /'məʊtəbaɪk/
 now boarding /,naʊ 'bɔːdɪŋ/
 pack (a bag) *v* /pæk/
 passenger *n* /'pæsɪndʒə/
 passport control *n* /,pɑːspɔːt
 kən'trɒl/
 primary school *n* /'praɪməri skuːl/
 (the) Pyramids *n pl* /ðə 'pɪrəɪmɪd/
 quarrel *n* /'kwɒrəl/
 reason *n* /'riːzən/
 retired *adj* /rɪ'taɪəd/
 seat *n* /siːt/
 secondary school *n* /'sekəndri
 skuːl/
 stay *v* /steɪ/
 three-course (meal) *n* /,θriː kɔːs
 'miː/
 tornado *n* /təː'neɪdəʊ/
 trolley *n* /'trɒli/
 washing-up *n* /,wɒʃɪŋ 'ʌp/
 waste (of time) *v* /'weɪst/

Irregular verbs

Base form	Past Simple	Past participle
be	was/were	been
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
can	could	been able
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone/been
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hit	hit	hit
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
leave	left	left
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read /ri:d/	read /red/	read /red/
ride	rode	ridden
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Verb patterns

Verb + -ing	
like	swimming
love	
enjoy	cooking
hate	
finish	
stop	

Verb + to + infinitive	
choose	to go
decide	
forget	
promise	
need	
help	to work
hope	
try	
want	
would like	
would love	

Verb + -ing or to + infinitive	
begin	raining/to rain
start	

Modal auxiliary verbs	
can	go
could	
shall	arrive
will	
would	

Phonetic symbols

Consonants

1	/p/	as in	pen /pen/
2	/b/	as in	big /bɪg/
3	/t/	as in	tea /ti:/
4	/d/	as in	do /du:/
5	/k/	as in	cat /kæt/
6	/g/	as in	go /gəʊ/
7	/f/	as in	four /fɔ:/
8	/v/	as in	very /'veri/
9	/s/	as in	son /sʌn/
10	/z/	as in	zoo /zu:/
11	/l/	as in	live /lɪv/
12	/m/	as in	my /maɪ/
13	/n/	as in	near /nɪə/
14	/h/	as in	happy /'hæpi/
15	/r/	as in	red /red/
16	/j/	as in	yes /jes/
17	/w/	as in	want /wɒnt/
18	/θ/	as in	thanks /θæŋks/
19	/ð/	as in	the /ðə/
20	/ʃ/	as in	she /ʃi:/
21	/ʒ/	as in	television /'telɪvɪʒn/
22	/tʃ/	as in	child /tʃaɪld/
23	/dʒ/	as in	German /'dʒɜ:mən/
24	/ŋ/	as in	English /'ɪŋɡlɪʃ/

Vowels

25	/i:/	as in	see /si:/
26	/ɪ/	as in	his /hɪz/
27	/i/	as in	twenty /'twenti/
28	/e/	as in	ten /ten/
29	/æ/	as in	stamp /stæmp/
30	/ɑ:/	as in	father /'fɑ:ðə/
31	/ɒ/	as in	hot /hɒt/
32	/ɔ:/	as in	morning /'mɔ:nɪŋ/
33	/ʊ/	as in	football /'fʊtbɔ:l/
34	/u:/	as in	you /ju:/
35	/ʌ/	as in	sun /sʌn/
36	/ɜ:/	as in	learn /lɜ:n/
37	/ə/	as in	letter /'letə/

Diphthongs (two vowels together)

38	/eɪ/	as in	name /neɪm/
39	/əʊ/	as in	no /nəʊ/
40	/aɪ/	as in	my /maɪ/
41	/aʊ/	as in	how /haʊ/
42	/ɔɪ/	as in	boy /bɔɪ/
43	/ɪə/	as in	hear /hɪə/
44	/eə/	as in	where /weə/
45	/ʊə/	as in	tour /tʊə/



the **THIRD** edition

Teachers around the world comment on the **THIRD** edition of New Headway Elementary ...

‘An inspiring and well-written book that perfectly suits the needs of both teachers and students.’

‘An international approach reflecting the global village.’

‘... more action, more colour ... in good accordance with today’s accelerated world.’



New Headway **Elementary**

The world’s most trusted English course

New Headway is the course teachers and learners can rely on. Why? An authoritative integrated syllabus, motivating topics, and clearly focused tasks combine with a real understanding of what works in the classroom. It all makes for effective teaching and effective learning. Tried and tested all over the world, it’s probably the most popular course ever written.

What’s different about

the **THIRD** edition of *New Headway Elementary*?

- NEW** Up-to-date texts and topics
- NEW** Integrated writing syllabus and pairwork activities
- NEW** Music of English boxes focus on stress and intonation in Everyday English
- NEW** Integrated practice exercises in the Grammar Reference
- NEW** Fresh, new design

‘...attractive, well-organised,
and easy to use.’

PLUS

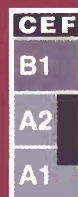
- Class CDs/cassettes
- Workbook (with or without key)
- Student’s Workbook CD/cassette
- Interactive Practice CD-ROM with video excerpts
- Free-standing pronunciation course with CD/cassette
- DVD/Video with student’s activity book
- Headway *online*: interactive exercises available at

www.oup.com/elt/headway

Liz and John Soars are internationally renowned authors, and highly experienced teachers and teacher trainers.

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt



OXFORD ENGLISH
ISBN 0-19-471509-4

